From: Commandant of the Marine Corps  
To: Distribution List  
Subj: TANK TRAINING AND READINESS (T&R) MANUAL  

Ref:  
(a) MCO P3500.72A  
(b) MCO 1553.3A  
(c) MCO 3400.3F  
(d) MCO 3500.27B W/Erratum  
(e) MCRP 3-0A  
(f) MCRP 3-0B  
(g) MCO 1553.2B  

Encl: (1) Tank T&R Manual  

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this T&R Manual, contained in enclosure (1), establishes training standards, regulations, and policies regarding the training of Marines and assigned Navy personnel to Marine Corps Tank Battalions.  

2. Cancellation. NAVMC Dir 3500.100  

3. Scope  
   
a. The Core Capability Mission Essential Task List in this manual is used in Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) for assessment and reporting of unit readiness. Units achieve training readiness for reporting in DRRS by gaining and sustaining proficiency in the training events in this manual at both the collective (unit) and individual levels.  

b. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit’s ability to execute its mission and develop long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency and correct deficiencies. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines and assigned Navy personnel. Commanders will use reference (c) to incorporate Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense training into training plans and reference (d) to integrate Operational Risk Management. References (e) and (f) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.  

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: APPROVED FOR PUBLIC RELEASE; DISTRIBUTION IS UNLIMITED.
c. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (g) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill training requirements established in this manual and provide career-progresson training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

4. Information. Commanding General (CG), Training and Education Command (TECOM) will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: CG, TECOM, Marine Air Ground Task Force Training and Education Standards Division (C 465), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, Virginia 22134.

5. Command. This manual is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

6. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.

[Signature]

T. M. MURRAY
By direction

DISTRIBUTION: PCN 10031984200
Subj: TANK TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL

Location: ____________________________________________________________
          (Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this Manual.)
# RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change Number</th>
<th>Date of Change</th>
<th>Date Entered</th>
<th>Signature of Person Incorporating Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TANK T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER
1. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . OVERVIEW
2. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX
3. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . BATTALION COLLECTIVE EVENTS
4. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . COMPANY COLLECTIVE EVENTS
5. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . PLATOON COLLECTIVE EVENTS
6. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . SECTION & CREW COLLECTIVE EVENTS
7. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . MOS 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS
8. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . MOS 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS
9. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . GUNNERY EVENTS
10 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . TOW/SCOUT EVENTS

APPENDICES
A. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . TERMS AND DEFINITIONS
B. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . T&R CHANGES
C. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . AMMUNITION Requirements
D. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . SIMULATION
E. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . ACROMYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS
F. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . References
## CHAPTER 1

### OVERVIEW

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INTRODUCTION.</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT TRAINING.</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT.</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING.</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORGANIZATION.</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&amp;R EVENT CODING.</td>
<td>1-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP).</td>
<td>1-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP CALCULATION.</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T&amp;R EVENT COMPOSITION.</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR (CBRN) TRAINING.</td>
<td>1-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIGHT TRAINING.</td>
<td>1-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM).</td>
<td>1-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MARINE CORPS GROUND T&amp;R PROGRAM.</td>
<td>1-12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The T&R Program is the Corps’ primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task List(s) (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). This T&R Manual is built around these METLs and other related Marine Corps Tasks (MCT). All events contained in the manual relate directly to these METLs and MCTs. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps’ ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit’s METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).

3. The T&R Manual is designed for use by unit commanders to determine pre-deployment training requirements in preparation for training and for Formal Learning Centers (FLCs) and Training Detachments to create courses of instruction. This directive focuses on individual and collective tasks performed by operating forces (OPFOR) units and supervised by personnel in the performance of unit Mission Essential Tasks (METs).

1001. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine’s ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential. However, it is not necessary to have all individuals within a unit fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander’s control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. During these periods, unit readiness is enhanced if emphasis is placed on the individual training of Marines on-hand. Subsequently, these Marines will be mission ready and capable of executing as part of a team when the full complement of personnel is available.
2. Commanders will ensure that all tactical training is focused on their combat mission. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit’s training plan. In most cases, unit training should focus on achieving unit proficiency in the core METL. However, commanders will adjust their training focus to support METLs associated with a major Operational Plan (OPLAN)/Contingency Plan (CONPLAN) or named operation as designated by their higher commander and reported accordingly in the DRRS. Tactical training will support the METL in use by the commander and be tailored to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of training in a professional manner consistent with Marine Corps standards cannot be over emphasized.

3. Commanders will provide personnel the opportunity to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by this Manual. Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit as determined by the unit commander.

1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Unit Training Management (UTM) is the application of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) and the Marine Corps Training Principles. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its wartime mission.

2. UTM techniques, described in references (b) and (e), provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps Training Principles, explained in reference (b), provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

   - Train as you fight
   - Make commanders responsible for training
   - Use standards-based training
   - Use performance-oriented training
   - Use mission-oriented training
   - Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team
   - Train to sustain proficiency
   - Train to challenge

3. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective programs are contained in references (b), (e) and (f).

1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members
of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation).

2. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their MOS at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. Whether it involves individual or collective training events, they must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or before expiration of the designated sustainment interval. Performance of the training event, however, is not sufficient to ensure combat readiness. Leaders at all levels must evaluate the performance of their Marines and the unit as they complete training events, and only record successful accomplishment of training based upon the evaluation. The goal of evaluation is to ensure that correct methods are employed to achieve the desired standard, or the Marines understand how they need to improve in order to attain the standard. Leaders must determine whether credit for completing a training event is recorded if the standard was not achieved. While successful accomplishment is desired, debriefing of errors can result in successful learning that will allow ethical recording of training event completion. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.

3. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit’s/Marine’s proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit’s METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events. References (a) and (f) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations using the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

1004. ORGANIZATION. The Tank T&R Manual is a unit-based Manual comprised of 9 chapters. Chapter 2 lists the Core Capability METs and their related Battalion and Company-level events. Chapters 3 through 6 contain collective events, Chapters 7 and 8 contain individual events, and Chapter 9 contains Gunnery events.

1005. T&R EVENT CODING. An event contained within a T&R Manual is an individual or collective training standard. This section explains each of the components of a T&R event. These items will be included in all of the events in each T&R Manual. Community-based T&R Manuals may have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R Manuals. The event condition, event title (behavior) and event standard should be read together as a grammatical sentence.

1. Event Code. The event code is an up to 4-4-4 alphanumeric character set:
   a. First up to 4 characters indicate MOS or Community (e.g., 0321, 1812 or INTL)
b. Second up to 4 characters indicate functional or duty area (e.g. DEF, FSPT, MVMT, etc.)

c. Third 4 characters indicate the unit size and supported unit, if applicable (1000 through 9000), and sequence. Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of unit size to event code. NOTE: The titles for the various echelons are for example only, and are not exclusive. For example: 4000-level events are appropriate for Section-level events as noted, but also for Squad-level events.

Figure 1-1: T&R Event Levels

(1) Grouping. Categorizing events with the use of a recognizable code makes the type of skill or capability being referenced fairly obvious. Examples include: PAT for patrolling events, DEF for events in the defense, FSPT for events related to fire support, etc. There is no special significance to the functional areas, but they should be intuitive to make it as easy as possible for the T&R user to find events. When organizing the T&R Manual, functional areas are alphabetized then the associated events are numbered. The events will be numbered based upon the introduction of each new functional area, allowing up to “999” events. For example: if there are seven Administrative events 4431 occupational field, then the events should start 4431-ADMN-1001 and run through 1007. Next, the Bulk Fuel events, BUFL should start at 4431-BUFL-1001.

(2) Sequencing. A numerical code is assigned to each individual (1000-2000-level) or collective (3000-9000-level) training event. The first number identifies the size of the unit performing the event, as depicted in figure 1-1. The second number is available for T&R Manuals with collective events that support those in other manuals to identify the echelon of unit being supported by a particular collective event. If a collective event is supported by other events or is performed in general support without regard to echelon, then a zero “0” will be utilized as the second number. For example: 0231-TGT-3801 would refer to an event conducted by a four Marine Targeting Cell supporting a Regiment or Group, 0231-TGT-3001 would represent an event the Targeting Cell does in support of any sized unit. The event would not be labeled 0231-TGT-8001 because that would imply that a regiment sized targeting unit was performing some task. This is not possible, since...
no intelligence unit organizes in a unit larger than a Battalion. EXCEPTION: Events that relate to staff planning, to the conduct of a command operations center or to staff level decision making processes will be numbered according to the level of the unit to which the staff belongs. For example: an infantry battalion staff conducting planning for an offensive attack would be labeled as INF-PLAN-7001 even though the entire battalion is not actively involved in the planning of the operation. T&R event sequence numbers that begin with “9” are reserved for Marine Air Ground Task Forces (MAGTF) Command Element (CE) events. Marine Expeditionary Units (MEU) CE events will be numbered 90XX – 93XX. Marine Expeditionary Brigade (MEB) CE events will be numbered 94XX – 96XX. Marine Expeditionary Force (MEF) CE events will be numbered 97XX – 99XX.

Figure 1-2: T&R Event Coding

1006. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE (CRP)

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a “Combat Readiness Percentage”, as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. CRP is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. Unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called “Evaluation-Coded” (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

4. Individual combat readiness is assessed as the percentage of required individual events in which a Marine is current. This translates as the percentage of training events for his/her MOS and grade that the Marine successfully completes within the directed sustainment interval. Individual skills are developed through a combination of 1000-level training (entry-level formal school courses), individual on-the-job training in 2000-level events, and follow-on formal school training. Skill proficiency is maintained by retraining in each event per the specified sustainment interval.
1007. CRP CALCULATION

1. Collective training begins at the 3000-level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. E-Coded collective events are the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has four E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: 75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325

Unit CRP: 325 (total MET CRP)/5 (total number of METS) = 65%

1008. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. Event Code. The event code is explained in paragraph 1005.

2. Title. The name of the event. The event title contains one action verb and ideally, one object.

3. Evaluation Coded. Collective events categorize the capabilities that a given unit may be expected to perform. There are some collective events that the Marine Corps has determined that a unit MUST be able to perform, if that unit is to be considered fully ready for operations. These E-Coded events represent the irreducible minimum or the floor of readiness for a unit. E-Coded events are derived from the training measures of effectiveness for the METs for units that must report readiness in the DRRS. It would seem
intuitive that most E-Coded events would be for Battalion sized units and higher since those are the units that report in DRRS. However, if the Marine Corps has determined that the readiness of a subordinate, supporting unit to accomplish a particular collective event is vital to the accomplishment of the supported unit’s MET, then that lower echelon collective event is E-Coded.

4. **Supported MET(s).** List all METs that are supported by the training event in the judgment of the occupation field drafting the T&R Manual, even if those events are not listed as Measure of Effectiveness (MOEs) in a MET.

5. **Sustainment Interval.** This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation or retraining requirements. Competencies and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are to be refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals be adhered to in order to ensure Marines maintain proficiency.

6. **Billet/MOS.** Each individual training event will contain a billet code and/or MOS that designates who is responsible for performing that event and any corresponding formal course required for that billet. Each commander has the flexibility to shift responsibilities based on the organization of his command. These codes are based on recommendations from the collective subject matter expertise that developed this manual and are listed for each event.

7. **Grade.** The Grade field indicates the rank at which Marines are required to complete the event.

8. **Description.** This field allows T&R developers to include an explanation of event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge, i.e., engage fixed target with crew-served weapons. This is an optional field for individual events but it is strongly encouraged for collective events. This field can be of great value guiding a FLC or OPFOR unit trying to discern the intent behind an event that might not be readily apparent.

9. **Condition.** Condition refers to the constraints that may affect event performance in a real-world environment. It indicates what is provided (equipment, tools, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints or conditions under which the task is to be performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. Commanders can modify the conditions of the event to best prepare their Marines to accomplish the assigned mission (e.g. in a desert environment; in a mountain environment; etc.). When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this should be stated. The content of the condition should be included in the event on a “by exception” basis. If there exists an assumption regarding the conditions under which all or most of the events in the Manual will be performed, then only those additional or exceptional items required should be listed in the condition. The common conditions under which all the events in a chapter will be executed will be listed as a separate paragraph at the beginning of the chapter.

10. **Standard.** The performance standard indicates the basis for judging the effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded
statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and must be strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events will likely be general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. The standard for individual events will be objective, quantifiable, and readily observable. Standards will more specifically describe to what proficiency level, specified in terms of accuracy, completeness, time required, and sequencing the event is to be accomplished. These guidelines can be summarized in the acronym “ACTS” (Accuracy Completeness Time Sequence.) In no cases will “per the reference” or “per/in accordance with commander’s intent” be used as a stand-alone standard.

11. Event Components/Performance Steps. Description of the actions that the event is composed of, or a list of subordinate, included T&R event codes and event descriptions. The event components help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event. Event components are used for collective events; performance steps are used for individual events.

   a. The event components and performance steps will be consciously written so that they may be employed as performance evaluation check lists by the operating forces.

   b. Event components may be events one individual in the unit performs, events that small groups in the unit perform, or events involving the entire unit. After the publication of this order, all component events will identify the behaviors required in plain English but also by citing the precise event number the component event refers to, unless that component event only occurs as part of the collective event where it is listed. This provision will allow for specific events to be chained together in order to provide greater granularity for units and Marines executing the events, and clarity for those charged with evaluating unit performance.

12. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

13. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are “chained.” The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-Coded events) for the related subordinate level events.

14. Related ITEs. A list of all of the Individual Training Events (1000-2000-level events) that support the event.

15. Initial Training Setting. All individual events will designate the setting at which the skill is first taught, either at the FLC, in the OPFOR as MOJT, or via a distance learning product (DL).
16. **References.** The training references shall be utilized to determine task performance steps. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. T&R Manuals are designed to be a training outline, not to replicate or replace doctrinal publications, reference publications or technical manuals. References are key to developing detailed lesson plans, determining grading criteria, and ensuring standardization of training.

17. **Distance Learning Products.** Distance learning products include: Individual Multimedia Instruction (IMI), Computer-Based Training (CBT), Marine Corps Institute (MCI), etc. This notation is included when, in the opinion of the TRMG in consultation with the MTSD representative, the event can be taught via one of these media vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

18. **Support Requirements.** This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. This is a key section in the overall T&R effort, as resources will eventually be tied directly to the training towards METS. Future efforts to attain and allocate resources will be based on the requirements outlined in the T&R Manual. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel

The ordnance requirements for one year of training for the events in the T&R will be aggregated into a table contained in an appendix to the T&R. The task analyst and the occupational field representatives will be careful not to “double count” ammunition that might be employed in the performance of individual and collective events that are chained.

19. **Miscellaneous**

   a. This field provides space for any additional information that will assist in the planning and execution of the event. Units and FLCS are cautioned not to disregard this information or to consider the information of lesser importance than what is contained in other parts of the T&R event. Miscellaneous fields provide an opportunity for the drafters of the T&R event to communicate vital information that might not fit neatly into any other available field. The list may include, but is not limited to:

   - Admin Instructions
   - Special Personnel Certifications
   - Equipment Operating Hours
   - Road Miles

   b. An example of a T&R event is provided in figure 1-4.
1009. CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL RADIOLOGICAL NUCLEAR (CBRN) TRAINING

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in CBRN defense, in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive CBRN attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in a CBRN environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in a CBRN environment, CBRN training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under CBRN conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1010. NIGHT TRAINING

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force are capable of performing their assigned mission in “every climate and place,” current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned
missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on the availability of equipment and personnel.

1011. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

1. ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers will integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a Course Of Action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Sailors/Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM is found in references (b) and (d).

1012. MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for Ground T&R Program is to publish a T&R Manual for every readiness-reporting unit so that core capability METs are clearly defined with supporting collective training standards, and to publish community-based T&R Manuals for all occupational fields whose personnel augment other units to increase their combat and/or logistic capabilities. The vision for this program includes plans to provide a Marine Corps training management information system that enables tracking of unit and individual training accomplishments by unit commanders and small unit leaders, automatically computing CRP for both units and individual Marines based upon MOS and rank (or billet). Linkage of T&R Events to the MCTL, through the core capability METs, has enabled objective assessment of training readiness in the DRRS.

2. DRRS measures and reports on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. With unit CRP based on the unit’s training toward its
METs, the CRP will provide a more accurate picture of a unit’s readiness. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to units’ METLs.
TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>2-6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

2000. TANK MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST. The list below includes the core capability Mission Essential Task List (METL) with the Battalion and Company collective events that support each MET. All METS are derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL).

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MCT 1.1.2 PROVIDE TASK-ORGANIZED FORCES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-7003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-5003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MCT 1.6.1 CONDUCT OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-C2-7001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-7001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-7001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-7001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-7002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-7001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-C2-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-6002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-6002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-C2-5001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-5001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-5002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-5001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-5002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-5001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-5001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-5001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-5002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-5003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MCT 1.6.4 CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-C2-7001</td>
<td>Conduct Command Post Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-7001</td>
<td>Conduct Intelligence Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-7001</td>
<td>Conduct CBRN Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-7001</td>
<td>Conduct Fire Support Coordination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-7001</td>
<td>Conduct Combat Service Support Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-7002</td>
<td>Employ Field Trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7001</td>
<td>Occupy an Assembly Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7006</td>
<td>Conduct a Mobile Defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Code</td>
<td>Task Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7007</td>
<td>Conduct an Area Defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7008</td>
<td>Conduct a Retrograde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7009</td>
<td>Conduct Security Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7010</td>
<td>Conduct a Relief in Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7011</td>
<td>Conduct a Passage of Lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7015</td>
<td>Direct Reconnaissance Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-C2-6001</td>
<td>Conduct Troop Leading Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-6001</td>
<td>Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-6001</td>
<td>Conduct Local Security Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-6002</td>
<td>Conduct CBRN Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-6001</td>
<td>Employ a Fire Support Team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-6001</td>
<td>Employ Company Combat Trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-6002</td>
<td>Employ Company Field Trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6001</td>
<td>Occupy an Assembly Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6006</td>
<td>Conduct an Area Defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6007</td>
<td>Conduct a Retrograde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6008</td>
<td>Conduct Security Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6009</td>
<td>Conduct a Relief in Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6010</td>
<td>Conduct a Passage of Lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-C2-5001</td>
<td>Conduct Troop Leading Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-5001</td>
<td>Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-5002</td>
<td>Establish an Observation Post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-5001</td>
<td>Conduct Local Security Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-5002</td>
<td>Conduct CBRN Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-5001</td>
<td>Conduct Resupply Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-5001</td>
<td>Employ Fire Support Assets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5001</td>
<td>Occupy an Assembly Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5014</td>
<td>Conduct a Reconnaissance by Fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5015</td>
<td>Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5016</td>
<td>Defend a Battle Position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5017</td>
<td>Conduct a Delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5018</td>
<td>Conduct a Withdrawal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5019</td>
<td>Conduct a Screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5020</td>
<td>Conduct a Relief in Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5021</td>
<td>Conduct a Passage of Lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5025</td>
<td>Conduct Convoy Security Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4001</td>
<td>Conduct Table VII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4002</td>
<td>Conduct Table VIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4003</td>
<td>Conduct Table IX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MCT 1.12.1 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3001 Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3002 Zero Tank Main gun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3003 Zero .50 caliber machine gun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3004 Zero Coaxial Machine Gun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3005 Conduct Table I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3006 Conduct Table II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3007 Conduct Table III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3008 Conduct Table IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3009 Conduct Table V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3010 Conduct Table VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-7014 Support an Amphibious Assault</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6013 Support an Amphibious Assault</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5024 Support an Amphibious Assault</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2001. MARINE CORPS TASK DESCRIPTION. The below is the description of the Marine Corps Tasks assigned to the tank community.

MCT 1.1.2 Provide Task-Organized Forces. To provide and deploy all Marine Corps combat, combat support, and combat service support units. Forward-deployed Marine Air-Ground Task Forces (MAGTFs), with their range of capabilities, are designed to enable the Joint Force Commander to resolve crises and win conflicts. MAGTFs are uniquely suited to support the national security strategy by rapidly projecting the required capability into a foreign setting to abate the crisis. This capability is central to the United States ability to safeguard its national interests.

MCT 1.6.1 Conduct Offensive Operations. Take the initiative, gain freedom of action to allow swift transition from one action to another and to put the enemy at risk throughout the depth and space of the battlespace. Defeat, destroy or neutralize the enemy force by taking the fight to the enemy in such a way as to achieve victory at least cost.

MCT 1.6.4 Conduct Defensive Operations. Take action to defeat an enemy attack. Buy time, to hold a piece of key terrain, to facilitate other operations, to preoccupy the enemy in one area so friendly forces can attack him in another, or to erode enemy resources at a rapid rate while reinforcing friendly operations.

MCT 1.12.1 Conduct Amphibious Operations. To conduct a military operation launched from the sea by an amphibious force, embarked in ships or craft with the primary purpose of introducing a landing force ashore to accomplish the assigned mission. Types of amphibious operations include assaults, withdrawals, demonstrations, raids, and other amphibious operations in a permissive, uncertain, or hostile environment.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PURPOSE</th>
<th>3000</th>
<th>3-2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>3001</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>3002</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY</td>
<td>3003</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>3004</td>
<td>3-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>3005</td>
<td>3-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains the Battalion level Tank unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies Mission Essential Tasks (METs) and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

3001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with “TANK” indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion and Company level are:

   - INT - Intelligence
   - LOG - Logistics
   - C2 - Command and Control
   - FPRO - Force Protection
   - MANV - Maneuver
   - FSPT - Fire Support

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

1. Commanders should select which collective events under a MET will be E-Coded for purposes of recording and calculating Combat Readiness Percentages.

2. Each event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

3003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, participates in, and conducts operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.
2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

3. Participates in, and conducts a passage of lines, relief in place, and link up as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.

4. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.

5. Supports another unit by fire.

6. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations in urban environments.

7. Participates in and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations, and security operations.

8. Breaches obstacles.

9. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with mechanized and motorized forces.

10. Defends against air attack.


12. Employs inorganic assets to include AAVs and support aircraft.

13. Processes and evacuates casualties.

14. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts route, area, and zone reconnaissance operations.

15. Prepares for, plans, and executes battalion level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, exploitation, pursuit, mobile/area defense, relief in place, passage of lines, security operations, and consolidate.

16. Contributes to and conducts tactical and operational logistics planning.

17. Processes intelligence information.

18. Participates in and conducts fire support planning and execution.

19. Conducts command post operations.

20. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts amphibious planning and operations.

21. Logistically sustain the battalion.

3004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

| BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS |
### Event Code | Eval Code | Event | Page
---|---|---|---
TANK-C2-7001 | YES | Conduct Command Post Operations | 3-4
TANK-INT-7001 |  | Direct Intelligence Operations | 3-5
TANK-FPRO-7001 |  | Conduct CBRN Operations | 3-6
TANK-LOG-7001 | YES | Conduct Combat Service Support Operations | 3-7
TANK-LOG-7002 |  | Employ Field Trains | 3-7
TANK-LOG-7003 |  | Prepare for Deployment | 3-8
TANK-FSPT-7001 | YES | Conduct Fire Support Coordination | 3-9
TANK-MANV-7001 |  | Occupy an Assembly Area | 3-9
TANK-MANV-7002 |  | Conduct a Movement to Contact | 3-10
TANK-MANV-7003 | YES | Conduct an Attack | 3-11
TANK-MANV-7004 |  | Conduct an Exploitation | 3-12
TANK-MANV-7005 |  | Conduct a Pursuit | 3-13
TANK-MANV-7006 |  | Conduct a Mobile Defense | 3-14
TANK-MANV-7007 | YES | Conduct an Area Defense | 3-15
TANK-MANV-7008 |  | Conduct a Retrograde | 3-17
TANK-MANV-7009 | YES | Conduct Security Operations | 3-18
TANK-MANV-7010 |  | Conduct a Relief in Place | 3-18
TANK-MANV-7011 |  | Conduct a Passage of Lines | 3-19
TANK-MANV-7012 | YES | Conduct Breaching Operations | 3-20
TANK-MANV-7013 |  | Support an Amphibious Assault | 3-21
TANK-MANV-7014 |  | Direct Reconnaissance Operations | 3-21

#### 3005. BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**TANK-C2-7001**: Conduct Command Post Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: YES  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized battalion.

**STANDARD**: To facilitate command and control.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Select and occupy the command post location.
2. Direct the security and organization of the command post area.
3. Maintain continuity of operations.
4. Organize the staff and establish command post echelons and communications to support mission accomplishment.
5. Maintain communications with higher, adjacent and supporting units.
7. Conduct information management.
8. Assess operations.
9. Establish a battle rhythm.
10. Transition control of operations to the appropriate echelon.
11. Displace the command post.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TANK-C2-6001</th>
<th>TANK-FPRO-6001</th>
<th>TANK-INT-6001</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-6001</td>
<td>TANK-MANV-6001</td>
<td>TANK-MANV-6008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCDP 6 Command and Control
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)
7. MCWP 6-22A Multiservice Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Radio (SINCGARS)

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
- Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** Pair of AAVC7/AAVP7

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** CAPSET 4 or CAST trainer can be used to train this task.

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

**TANK-INT-7001:** Direct Intelligence Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

| MCT 1.6.1 | MCT 1.6.4 |

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To provide accurate and timely intelligence of enemy forces as well as terrain and civil considerations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct intelligence planning.
2. Conduct intelligence collection.
3. Conduct intelligence processing.
5. Conduct intelligence utilization.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-INT-5001 TANK-INT-6001

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCDP 2 Intelligence
4. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
5. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
6. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
7. MCWP 2-2 MASTF Intelligence Collection
8. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

TANK-FPRO-7001: Conduct CBRN Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct monitor, survey and decontamination operations.
6. Conduct operations in contaminated environments.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-FPRO-5002 TANK-FPRO-6002

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:
DODIC Description Quantity
G924 Grenade, Hand Riot Control CS-1 M25A 20 grenades per battalion
RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17230 Gas Chamber
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

TANK-LOG-7001: Conduct Combat Service Support Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1   MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To coordinate logistical support to friendly forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task Organize the log trains and establish the Administrative and Logistics Operation Center (ALOC).
2. Select and occupy the ALOC location.
3. Direct the security and organization of the ALOC.
4. Maintain communications with higher, adjacent and supporting units.
6. Conduct information management.
7. Assess operations.
8. Establish a battle rhythm.
9. Displace the ALOC as directed.
10. Maintain continuity of operations.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-LOG-7002: Employ Field Trains

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1   MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.
STANDARD: To provide logistics support to friendly forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize field trains according to tactical situation.
3. Issue orders.
4. Select and occupy location for field trains.
5. Establish security plan for field trains.
6. Provide supply support, maintenance support, transportation support, engineering support, health services and other services to friendly forces.
7. Displace field trains as directed.
8. Maintain continuity of operations.

CHAINED EVENTS:

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-LOG-7003: Prepare for Deployment

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: In order to prepare personnel and equipment for deployment.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct personnel administration.
2. Conduct pre-deployment health services.
3. Ensure rear detachment leaders and personnel are identified.

REFERENCES:
1. MCDP 4 Logistics
2. MCDP 5 Planning
3. MCDP 6 Command and Control
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 3-12.2 Direct Fire Gunnery
6. MCWP 3-32 Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
8. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

TANK-FSPT-7001: Conduct Fire Support Coordination

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Establish a Fire Support Coordination Center.
2. Conduct fire support planning.
3. Integrate fires with friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.
4. Coordinate and de-conflict fires.
5. Employ fire support assets.
6. Conduct battle damage assessment.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-2001  TANK-FSPT-5001  TANK-FSPT-6001

REFERENCES:
1. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
2. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-7001: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Dispatch quartering party to find a suitable location for assembly area.
2. Quartering party marks and guides friendly forces into position.
3. Friendly forces establish local security.
4. Adjacent units tie in flanks.
5. Establish wire communications.
6. Prepare sketch cards and fire plans.
7. Camouflage positions.
8. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
10. Initiate rest plan.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1812-TAC-2001 TANK-MANV-5001 TANK-MANV-6001

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-MANV-7002: Conduct a Movement to Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To gain and maintain contact with enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into a search and attack force.
3. Issue orders.
5. Search force establishes contact and fixes enemy forces.
6. Attack force maneuvers and destroys enemy forces.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS: TANK-MANV-6002
REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>1000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>1000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>15000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>10000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B519</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Target Practice M781</td>
<td>75 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B535</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute</td>
<td>15 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>300 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>50 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31-</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>50 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-7003: Conduct an Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To defeat, destroy or neutralize enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into an assault force and a support force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Move to assault position.
5. Move to attack position.
7. Support force establishes a support by fire position.
8. Assault force conducts actions on the objective.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
TANK-MANV-5012   TANK-MANV-6003

**RELATED EVENTS:**
TANK-MANV-5012   TANK-MANV-6003

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>1000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>2500 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>15000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>10000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B519 Cartridge, 40mm Target Practice M781</td>
<td>75 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute</td>
<td>15 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>300 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCS-T M865</td>
<td>50 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>20 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38 Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1028</td>
<td>25 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WH06- Guided Missile, BTM-71D-3B (TOW-1 Pr</td>
<td>26 missiles per battalion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

**TANK-MANV-7004:** Conduct an Exploitation

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To continue a successful attack and disorganize enemy forces in
depth.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Bypass enemy forces that no longer pose a threat to rear echelon forces.
3. Destroy enemy forces that continue pose a threat to rear echelon forces.
4. Seize enemy terrain, C2, facilities and resources.
5. Continue attack until friendly forces reach culmination point or attack transitions into a pursuit.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
TANK–MANV–5026 TANK–MANV–6004

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3–90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1–0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3–1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3–12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Item Description</th>
<th>Quantity per battalion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>2000 rounds per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>500 rounds per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>1500 rounds per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trac</td>
<td>8000 rounds per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>2500 rounds per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS–T M865</td>
<td>28 rounds per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31 Cartridge, 120mm TP–T XM1002</td>
<td>28 rounds per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G940 Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G945 Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G955 Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G982 Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83</td>
<td>10 grenades per battalion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

**TANK–MANV–7005:** Conduct a Pursuit

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION–CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
**CONDITION:** Given a task organized battalion.

**STANDARD:** To find, fix and defeat a fleeing enemy force.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Fix enemy forces along their escape route.
3. Friendly forces maneuvers and destroys fixed enemy forces.
4. Continue pursuit until friendly forces reaches culmination point.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
TANK-MANV-5027    TANK-MANV-6005

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>2000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>500 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>1500 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>12000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>8000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDDS-T M865</td>
<td>28 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>28 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St</td>
<td>10 projectiles per battalion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

**TANK-MANV-7006:** Conduct a Mobile Defense

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized battalion.
STANDARD: To defeat or destroy enemy forces by attacking with a striking force.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into a fixing force and a striking force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Gain and maintain contact with enemy forces.
5. Disrupt enemy forces in the main battle area.
6. Fixing force fixes enemy forces.
7. Striking force maneuvers against and destroys enemy forces.
8. Striking force continues attack until friendly forces reach culmination point or attack transitions into a pursuit.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-MANV-5016  TANK-MANV-6006

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>2000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single Single</td>
<td>500 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>2500 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trac Trace</td>
<td>15000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>8000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C995</td>
<td>Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT</td>
<td>6 missiles per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31-</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>28 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L305</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A</td>
<td>10 signals per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L307</td>
<td>Signal, Illumination Ground White St</td>
<td>10 signals per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L314</td>
<td>Signal, Illumination Ground Green St</td>
<td>10 signals per battalion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-7007: Conduct an Area Defense
SUPPORTED MET(S):  MCT 1.6.4
EVALUATION-CODED:  YES       SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months
CONDITION:  Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD:  To deny enemy forces from specific terrain or avenue of approach for one regiment or three battalions for a specific time.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into a defending force and a counterattack force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of AO.
5. Conduct engagement area development.
6. Occupy and establish primary, alternate and supplementary positions.
7. Conduct continuing actions.
8. Defend against enemy attack.
9. Counterattack against enemy forces.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-MANV-5016       TANK-MANV-6006

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>1000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>3000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trac</td>
<td>20000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>11500 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B519</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Target Practice M781</td>
<td>50 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>100 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>40 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C995</td>
<td>Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT</td>
<td>6 rockets per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31-</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>44 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38-</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028</td>
<td>15 rounds per Battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G940</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G945</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G955</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G982</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83</td>
<td>10 grenades per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L305.</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A</td>
<td>10 signals per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L307.</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR CLSTR M18A1</td>
<td>10 signals per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312</td>
<td>Signal, Illumination Ground White St</td>
<td>10 signals per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L314</td>
<td>Signal, Illumination Ground Green St</td>
<td>10 signals per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WH05-</td>
<td>Guided Missile, BTM-71D-3B (TOW-1 Pr</td>
<td>26 missiles per battalion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-7008: Conduct a Retrograde

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Break contact from enemy forces.
5. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS: TANK-MANV-5018 TANK-MANV-6007

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.
TANK-MANV-7009: Conduct Security Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To protect friendly force by providing early warning of enemy operations and time for friendly forces to maneuver against them.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Provide screening force, guarding force, and/or covering force.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-FPRO-5001  TANK-MANV-6008

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked</td>
<td>6000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single</td>
<td>12000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: TOW and Scout platoons will be used for this task as a Battalion organic asset.

TANK-MANV-7010: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Exchange liaison personnel between relieving unit and unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Relieving unit assumes command of AO.
7. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

CHAINED EVENTS:

TANK-MANV-5020 TANK-MANV-6009

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-MANV-7011: Conduct a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Moving unit displays proper recognition signals.
3. Moving unit maintains gun tube orientation towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-MANV-5021 TANK-MANV-6010

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-MANV-7012: Conduct Breaching Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To breach a complex obstacle.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify obstacle and points of penetration.
2. Task organize into support force, assault force and breach force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Support element secures breach site by establishing suppression and obscuration at breach site.
5. Breach force reduces obstacle and proofs / marks lanes.
6. Assault force maneuvers through proofed lanes and assaults through and secures the far side objectives.
7. Remaining friendly forces move through proofed lanes and continues mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-MANV-5022 TANK-MANV-6011

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>2000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>500 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>2000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>15000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>10000 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>26 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C995</td>
<td>Cartridge and Launcher, 84mm M136 AT</td>
<td>6 rockets per battalion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31-</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>30 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
TANK-MANV-7013: Support an Amphibious Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized battalion.

STANDARD: To provide rapid build-up of combat power ashore.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Advise in the development of an amphibious landing plan.
2. Train capable forces.
3. Provide task organized forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-MANV-5023  TANK-MANV-6012

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
6. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-MANV-7014: Direct Reconnaissance Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a tasked organized battalion with supporting units.

STANDARD: To provide critical information relative to enemy and terrain.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
2. Task organize.
3. Develop emergency extraction plan and identify quick reaction force.
5. Send and receive other required reports.
6. Develop/refine information/situation as required.
7. Conduct debrief.
RELATED EVENTS:
1802-INT-1001 1802-INT-1002 1802-REC-1001
1812-INT-2001 1812-REC-2001 TANK-INT-5001
TANK-INT-5002 TANK-INT-6001

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
5. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.
# TANK T&R MANUAL

## CHAPTER 4

**COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Coding</td>
<td>4001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrative Notes</td>
<td>4002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collective Description/Core Capability</td>
<td>4003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index of Collective Events</td>
<td>4004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company Level Collective Events</td>
<td>4005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains the Company level Tank unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies METs and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the focal point for Platoon training, detailed in the subsequent chapters.

4001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with “TANK” indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion and Company level are:

   INT – Intelligence
   C2 – Command and Control
   MANV- Maneuver

   LOG – Logistics
   FPRO – Force Protection
   FSPT – Fire Support

   c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

4002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

1. Commanders should select which collective events under a MET will be E-Coded for purposes of recording and calculating Combat Readiness Percentages.

2. Each Event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

4003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, participates in, and conducts operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.
2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

3. Participates in and conducts a passage of lines, relief in place, and link up as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.

4. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.

5. Supports another unit by fire.

6. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations in urban environments.

7. Participates in and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations, and security operations.

8. Breaches obstacles.

9. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with mechanized and motorized forces.

10. Defends against air attack.


12. Employs inorganic assets to include AAVs and support aircraft.

13. Processes and evacuates casualties.

14. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts route, area, and zone reconnaissance operations.

15. Prepares for, plans, and executes battalion level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, exploitation, pursuit, mobile/area defense, relief in place, passage of lines, security operations, combined arms breach, and consolidate.

16. Contributes to and conducts tactical and operational logistics planning.

17. Processes intelligence information.

18. Participates in and conducts fire support planning and execution.

19. Conducts command post operations.

20. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts amphibious planning and operations.

21. Logistically sustain the company.

4004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Eval Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-C2-6001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Troop Leading Procedures</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-6001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-6001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Local Security Operations</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-6002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct CBRN Operations</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-6001</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Employ a Fire Support Team</td>
<td>4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-6001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Employ Company Trains</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupy an Assembly Area</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Movement to Contact</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6003</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Conduct an Attack</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct an Exploitation</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Pursuit</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6006</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Conduct an Area Defense</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Retrograde</td>
<td>4-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6008</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Security Operations</td>
<td>4-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6009</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Relief in Place</td>
<td>4-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6010</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Passage of Lines</td>
<td>4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6011</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Conduct Breaching Operations</td>
<td>4-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-6012</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Support an Amphibious Assault</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4005. COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**TANK-C2-6001**: Conduct Troop Leading Procedures

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized company.

**STANDARD**: To plan and prepare for operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Begin the planning and assess METT-TCSL.
2. Arrange for reconnaissance via map, imagery, UAS or recon patrol.
3. Make reconnaissance and confirm SALUTE, KOCOA, routes and positions.
4. Complete the plan and develop operations order.
5. Issue orders.
6. Supervise by conducting brief backs, PCC/PCIs and rehearsals.

**CHAINED EVENTS**: TANK-C2-5001

**REFERENCES**:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

---

**TANK-INT-6001:** Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized company.

**STANDARD:** To analyze the threat and environment in a specific geographic area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Define the battlefield environment.
2. Describe the battlefield effects.
3. Evaluate the threat.
4. Determine threat courses of action.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
1802-INT-1001  1802-INT-1002  1812-INT-2001
TANK-INT-5001

**RELATED EVENTS:** TANK-INT-7001

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

---

**TANK-FPRO-6001:** Conduct Local Security Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized company.

**STANDARD:** To protect troops, facilities and equipment from enemy attacks.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Avoid detection by enemy forces.
2. Establish observation posts
3. Deceive enemy forces of friendly locations and intentions.
4. Locate enemy forces in the immediate vicinity.
5. Determine locations and intentions of enemy forces.

CHAINED EVENTS: TANK-FPRO-5001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

UNITS/LPERSONNEL: When H&S Company is ISO Company or Bn operations, the
unit will be task organized in such a way to supplement security
operations.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Scout and TOW platoons if available can be
used ISO establishing local security and observation posts.

TANK-FPRO-6002: Conduct CBRN Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1       MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO       SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct monitor, survey and decontamination operations.
6. Conduct operations in contaminated environments.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-FPRO-5002       TANK-MANV-5008       TANK-MANV-5009

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for CBRN Operations
5. MCWP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G924 Grenade, Hand Riot Control CS-1 M25A</td>
<td>10 grenades per company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

- Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
- Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

**TANK-FSPT-6001:** Employ a Fire Support Team

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

- MCT 1.1.2
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized company.

**STANDARD:** To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct fire support planning.
2. Make contact with enemy forces.
3. Execute fire support plan.
4. Analyze and report BDA to higher.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

- 1802-CBTS-1001
- 1802-CBTS-2001
- 1812-CBTS-2003
- TANK-FSPT-5001

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCRP 3-16 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
4. MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-LOG-6001: Employ Company Trains

SUPPORTED MET(S):
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To provide logistics support to friendly forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize company trains according to tactical situation.
3. Issue orders.
4. Select and occupy location for company trains.
5. Establish security plan for company trains.
6. Provide supply support, maintenance support, transportation, and other services to friendly forces.
7. Displace field trains as directed.
8. Maintain continuity of operations.
9. Treat and evacuate casualties.

CHAINED EVENTS:
- 1812-VOPS-2005
- TANK-MANV-5002

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
- Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-MANV-6001: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.
STANDARD: To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Dispatch quartering party to find a suitable location for assembly area.
2. Quartering party marks and guides friendly forces into position.
3. Friendly forces establish local security.
4. Adjacent units tie in flanks.
5. Establish wire communications.
6. Prepare sketch cards and fire plans.
7. Camouflage positions.
8. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
10. Initiate rest plan.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-MANV-5001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-MANV-6002: Conduct a Movement to Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To gain and maintain contact with enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into a search and attack force.
3. Issue orders.
5. Search force establishes contact and fixes enemy forces.
6. Attack force maneuvers and destroys enemy forces.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-FSPT-5001  TANK-MANV-5003  TANK-MANV-5004
REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity per company</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>1000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>1000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>3000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>2800 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B519</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Target Practice M781</td>
<td>25 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B535</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute</td>
<td>5 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>300 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>50 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1028</td>
<td>14 rounds per battalion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
- Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
- Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-6003: Conduct an Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S):
- MCT 1.1.2
- MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To defeat, destroy or neutralize enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into an assault force and a support force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Move to assault position.
5. Move to attack position.
7. Support force establishes a support by fire position.
8. Assault force conducts actions on the objective.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

TANK-MANV-5003  TANK-MANV-5004  TANK-MANV-5005
TANK-MANV-5010  TANK-MANV-5012  TANK-MANV-5025

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity per company</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>1000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>1000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>3000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>3000 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B519</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Target Practice M781</td>
<td>25 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B535</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute</td>
<td>5 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>100 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDDS-T M865</td>
<td>50 rounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38-</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028</td>
<td>14 rounds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
- Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
- Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

**TANK-MANV-6004:** Conduct an Exploitation

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized company.
STANDARD: To continue a successful attack and disorganize enemy forces in depth.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Bypass enemy forces that no longer pose a threat to rear echelon forces.
3. Destroy enemy forces that continue pose a threat to rear echelon forces.
4. Seize enemy terrain, facilities and resources.
5. Continue attack until friendly forces reach culmination point or attack transitions into a pursuit.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-PSPT-5001  TANK-MANV-5025  TANK-MANV-5026

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>2000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>500 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>500 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trac</td>
<td>1500 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>1400 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>28 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G940</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G945</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G955</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18</td>
<td>10 grenades per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G982</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Practice Smoke TA M83</td>
<td>10 grenades per company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-6005: Conduct a Pursuit

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To find, fix and defeat a fleeing enemy force.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Fix enemy forces along their escape route.
3. Friendly forces maneuvers and destroys fixed enemy forces.
4. Continue pursuit until friendly forces reaches culmination point.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-MANV-5025 TANK-MANV-5027

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>2000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>500 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>600 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>2100 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>1000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>42 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St</td>
<td>10 signals per company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-6006: Conduct an Area Defense

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.
STANDARD: To deny enemy forces (up to Battalion size) from specific terrain for a specific time.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into a defending force and a counterattack force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of AO.
5. Conduct engagement area development.
6. Occupy and establish primary, alternate and supplementary positions.
7. Conduct continuing actions.
8. Defend against enemy attack.
9. Counterattack against enemy forces.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-FSPT-5001 TANK-MANV-5016

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>1000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>1200 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>3300 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>1900 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B519</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Target Practice M781</td>
<td>50 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B535</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute</td>
<td>20 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>100 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785</td>
<td>Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>58 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L305</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A</td>
<td>10 signals per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L307</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR CLSTR M18A1</td>
<td>10 signals per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L314</td>
<td>Signal, Illumination Ground Green St</td>
<td>10 signals per company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.
TANK-MANV-6007: Conduct a Retrograde

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Break contact from enemy forces.
5. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS: TANK-MANV-5018

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-6008: Conduct Security Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To protect friendly force by providing early warning of enemy operations and time for friendly forces to maneuver against them.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Provide screening force, guarding force, and/or covering force.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-PRO-5001    TANK-MANV-5019    TANK-MANV-5024

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked</td>
<td>2000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single</td>
<td>4000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Tow and Scout platoons if available can be used for this task.

TANK-MANV-6009: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1       MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Exchange liaison personnel between relieving unit and unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Relieving unit assumes command of AO.
7. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

CHAINED EVENTS: TANK-MANV-5020

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

**TANK-MANV-6010:** Conduct a Passage of Lines

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized company.

**STANDARD:** To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Moving unit displays proper recognition signals.
3. Moving unit maintains gun tube orientation towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.

**CHAINED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5021

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

---

**TANK-MANV-6011:** Conduct Breaching Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To reduce a complex obstacle and provide a lane for passage of friendly units.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify obstacle and points of penetration.
2. Task organize into support force, assault force and breach force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Support element secures breach site by establishing suppression and obscuration at breach site.
5. Breach force reduces obstacle and proofs / marks lanes.
6. Assault force maneuvers through proofed lanes and assaults through to far side objectives.
7. Remaining friendly forces move through proofed lanes and continues mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:
TANK-FSPT-5001          TANK-MANV-5010          TANK-MANV-5011
TANK-MANV-5012          TANK-MANV-5022

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063 Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>1000 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>700 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>3600 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>1900 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>23 rounds per company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

UNITS/PERSOONEL: ABV/OCD/MCM detachment needed for training

TANK-MANV-6012: Support an Amphibious Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.12.1

EVALUATION-CODED: YES          SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized company.

STANDARD: To provide rapid build-up of combat power ashore.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Advise in the development of an amphibious landing plan.
2. Install fording kit.
3. Task organize into landing serials.
4. Issue orders.
5. Conduct amphibious landing.
6. Continue assault against enemy forces.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS: TANK-MANV-5023

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
6. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
7. TM 08953A 14&P Tank Deep Water Fording Kit

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

EQUIPMENT: Fording kits and Landing Crafts (LCU/LCAC) required
# TANK T&R MANUAL

## CHAPTER 5

### PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>5000 5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>5001 5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>5002 5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY</td>
<td>5003 5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>5004 5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>5005 5-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon level Tank unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to platoons and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

5001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

   a. Field one – Each event starts with “TANK” indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

   b. Field two – This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Platoon level are:

      GNRY - Gunnery
      C2 - Command and Control
      MANV- Maneuver
      LOG - Logistics
      INT - Intelligence
      FPRO - Force Protection
      FSPT - Fire Support

   c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

5002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

5003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, and participates in operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.

2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

3. Conducts a passage of lines as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.
4. Conducts battle tracking and reporting.

5. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.

6. Conducts a relief in place.

7. Conducts overwatch and support another unit by fire.

8. Participates and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations, and security operations.

9. Participates in and conducts operations in urban environments.


11. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with mechanized and motorized forces.

12. Prepares for and conducts platoon level offensive, defensive, and security operations.

13. Defends against air attack.


15. Executes platoon formations.


17. Conducts route reconnaissance and participates in zone and area reconnaissance operations.

18. Prepares for, plans, and executes platoon level offensive and defensive operations to include assault, bypass, reconnaissance by fire, delay, withdrawal, screen, relief in place, and consolidate.

19. Conducts convoy security operations.

20. Prepares and submits platoon fire plan sketches.

21. Conducts pre-combat inspections.

5004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Eval Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-C2-5001</td>
<td>C2</td>
<td>Conduct Troop Leading Procedures</td>
<td>5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-5001</td>
<td>INT</td>
<td>Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield</td>
<td>5-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-INT-5002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Establish an Observation Post</td>
<td>5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Local Security Operations</td>
<td>5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FPRO-5002</td>
<td>Conduct CBRN Operations</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-LOG-5001</td>
<td>Conduct Resupply Operations</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-FSPT-5001</td>
<td>Employ Fire Support Assets</td>
<td>5-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5001</td>
<td>Occupy an Assembly Area</td>
<td>5-9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5002</td>
<td>Conduct a Tactical Road March</td>
<td>5-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5003</td>
<td>Conduct a Change of Formation</td>
<td>5-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5004</td>
<td>Conduct a Contact Drill</td>
<td>5-11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5005</td>
<td>Conduct an Action Drill</td>
<td>5-12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5006</td>
<td>React to Indirect Fire</td>
<td>5-13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5007</td>
<td>React to an Air Attack</td>
<td>5-13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5008</td>
<td>React to a Nuclear Attack</td>
<td>5-14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5009</td>
<td>React to a Chemical or Biological Attack</td>
<td>5-15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5010</td>
<td>Conduct an Attack by Fire</td>
<td>5-15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5011</td>
<td>Conduct a Support by Fire</td>
<td>5-16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5012</td>
<td>Conduct an Assault</td>
<td>5-17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5013</td>
<td>Conduct a Bypass</td>
<td>5-18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5014</td>
<td>Conduct a Reconnaissance by Fire</td>
<td>5-19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5015</td>
<td>Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization</td>
<td>5-20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5016</td>
<td>Defend a Battle Position</td>
<td>5-21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5017</td>
<td>Conduct a Delay</td>
<td>5-22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5018</td>
<td>Conduct a Withdrawal</td>
<td>5-23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5019</td>
<td>Conduct a Screen</td>
<td>5-24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5020</td>
<td>Conduct a Relief in Place.</td>
<td>5-25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5021</td>
<td>Conduct a Passage of Lines</td>
<td>5-26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5022</td>
<td>Conduct Breaching Operations</td>
<td>5-27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5023</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>Support an Amphibious Assault</td>
<td>5-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5024</td>
<td>Conduct Convoy Security Operations</td>
<td>5-28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5025</td>
<td>Conduct a Tactical Movement</td>
<td>5-29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5026</td>
<td>Conduct an Exploitation</td>
<td>5-30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-MANV-5027</td>
<td>Conduct a Pursuit</td>
<td>5-31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-5001</td>
<td>Conduct Table X</td>
<td>5-32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-5002</td>
<td>Conduct Table XI</td>
<td>5-33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-5003</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>Conduct Table XII</td>
<td>5-34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5005. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**TANK-C2-5001:** Conduct Troop Leading Procedures

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

| MCT 1.6.1 | MCT 1.6.4 |

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO | **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

5-4 Enclosure (1)
CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To plan and prepare for operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Begin the planning and assess METT-T.
2. Arrange for reconnaissance via map, imagery, UAS or recon patrol.
3. Make reconnaissance and confirm SALUTE, KOCOA, routes and positions.
4. Complete the plan and develop operations order.
5. Issue orders.
6. Supervise by conducting brief backs, PCC/PCIs and rehearsals.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-INT-1001 1802-INT-1002 1802-REC-1001
1802-TAC-1001 1802-VOPS-1001 1812-INT-2001
1812-VOPS-1004

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

TANK-INT-5001: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To analyze the threat and environment in a specific geographic area.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Define the battlefield environment.
2. Describe the battlefield effects.
3. Evaluate the threat.
4. Determine threat courses of action.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-INT-1001 1802-INT-1002

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
TANK-INT-5002: Occupy an observation post

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To observe and report all activity to higher.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Move by cover and concealed route to the vicinity of observation post.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of tentative observation post.
3. Occupy observation post.
4. Establish security.
5. Establish communications.
6. Report activity to higher.
7. Move observation post as required.
8. Execute evacuation plan as required.
9. Execute relief actions or de-establish observation post.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-INT-1001 1802-INT-1002 1802-REC-1001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

TANK-FPRO-5001: Conduct Local Security Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To protect troops, facilities and equipment from enemy attacks.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Avoid detection by enemy forces.
2. Establish an observation post.
3. Deceive enemy forces of friendly locations and intentions.
4. Locate enemy forces in the immediate vicinity.
5. Determine locations and intentions of enemy forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CMDC-1001 1802-INT-1001 1802-INT-1002
1802-REC-1001 1802-TAC-1001 1812-INT-2001
1812-REC-2001
REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

TANK-FPRO-5002: Conduct CBRN Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct monitor, survey, and decontamination operations.
6. Conduct operations in contaminated environments.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for CBRN Operations
5. MCWP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
6. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site

TANK-LOG-5001: Conduct Resupply Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To replenish all classes of supplies in order to maintain combat power.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Submit logistics reports to higher headquarters.
2. Coordinate with company trains to conduct resupply.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Conduct resupply via tailgate or service stations methods.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1812-CSS-2002 1812-CSS-2003

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

TANK-FSPT-5001: Employ Fire Support Assets

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct fire support planning.
2. Make contact with enemy forces.
3. Execute fire support plan.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001 1802-CBTS-2001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
6. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

---

**TANK-MANV-5001:** Occupy an Assembly Area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Dispatch quartering party to find a suitable location for assembly area.
2. Quartering party marks and guides friendly forces into position.
3. Friendly forces establish local security.
4. Adjacent units tie in flanks.
5. Establish observation post
6. Establish wire communications.
7. Prepare sketch cards and fire plans.
8. Camouflage positions.
9. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
10. Conduct continuing actions.
11. Initiate rest plan.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
1802-CSS-2001  1802-INT-1001  1802-INT-1002
1802-REC-1001  1812-INT-2001  1812-REC-2001
1812-VOPS-2005

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Scout and TOW platoons if available can be used ISO establishing local security and observation posts on perimeter of AA.
TANK-MANV-5002: Conduct a Tactical Road March

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To move along a designated route and arrange forces according to enemy situation and terrain.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Determine formation, movement technique, speed and dispersion.
2. Determine order of march.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct movement along assigned route.
5. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
6. Conduct short halts as required.
7. Conduct battle drills as required.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1002  1812-CBTS-2001  1812-TAC-1001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5003: Conduct a Change of Formation

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To respond to a change in terrain or enemy situation.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Determine appropriate formation.
2. Issue orders.
3. Execute directed formation.

CHAINED EVENTS: 1812-TAC-1001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5004: Conduct a Contact Drill

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To orient weapons systems and engage an enemy without changing direction or speed.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify enemy contact.
2. Issue orders.
3. Orient weapon systems towards enemy location.
4. Engage enemy forces.
5. Send report to higher headquarter.


REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5005: Conduct an Action Drill

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To change direction of movement in response to terrain, obstacles or enemy situation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify change in terrain, obstacle or enemy situation.
2. Issue orders.
3. All tanks orient and move in prescribed formation and direction.


REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.
TANK-MANV-5006: React to Indirect Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1                  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO       SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To mitigate the effects of enemy indirect fires on friendly forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy indirect fires.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct action drill if moving to avoid impact area.
4. Tank Commander places hatch in open protected position.
5. Loader closes hatch.
6. Gunner closes ballistic doors.
7. Send report to higher headquarters.
8. Continue mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1812-TAC-1001  1812-VOPS-1003

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

---

TANK-MANV-5007: React to an Air Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1                  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO       SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To mitigate the effects of enemy air attacks on friendly forces.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy aircraft.
2. Issue orders.
3. If not observed by enemy aircraft, tanks seek cover and concealment with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
4. If observed by enemy aircraft, move at a 45 degree angle from path of flight with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
5. Engage aircraft with heavy volume of fires in the path of flight.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.
7. Continue mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1812-TAC-1001 1812-VOPS-1003

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5008: React to a Nuclear Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To mitigate the effects of an enemy nuclear detonation on friendly forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify and alert platoon of nuclear detonation.
2. Close all hatches, ballistic doors and breech.
3. If time permits, position tanks behind protective terrain.
4. Turn off vehicle master power.
5. After effects of detonation have passed, reestablish communications.
6. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
7. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
8. Continue mission.
**TANK-MANV-5009:** React to a Chemical or Biological Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**  
MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of an enemy chemical or biological attack on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Identify and alert platoon of chemical or biological contamination.
2. Put on protective masks within 15 seconds.
3. Activate tank overpressure system.
4. Assume MOPP-4 within 8 minutes.
5. Send CBRN-1 report to higher headquarters.
6. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
7. Continue mission.

**TANK-MANV-5010:** Conduct an Attack by Fire

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To destroy enemy forces using long range fires from dominant terrain using the standoff of the main gun.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct tactical movement to dominant terrain that allows weapons standoff.
5. Assume hull down firing position.
6. Assign target reference points, sectors of fire and fighting positions.
7. Issue platoon fire command specifying method of fire, firing pattern and rate of fire to engage enemy forces.
8. Send report to higher headquarters.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001  1802-TAC-1001  1812-CBTS-2003
1812-GNRY-1007  1812-GNRY-2007

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm</td>
<td>4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50</td>
<td>4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>300 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm</td>
<td>TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>9 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5011: Conduct a Support by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.
STANDARD: To support the movement of friendly forces by suppressing enemy forces using long range fires.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct tactical movement to dominant terrain that allows weapons standoff.
5. Assume hull down firing position.
6. Assign target reference points, sectors of fire and fighting positions.
7. Issue platoon fire command specifying method of fire, firing pattern and rate of fire to engage enemy forces.
8. Maintain communications with the moving force.
9. Lift and shift direct and indirect fires as required to prevent fratricide.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001 1802-GNRY-1003 1802-TAC-1001
1812-GNRY-1007 1812-GNRY-2007

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCS5-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5012: Conduct an Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1
CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To defeat, destroy or neutralize enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into an assault force and a support force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Move to assault position.
5. Move to attack position.
7. Support force establishes a support by fire position.
8. Assault force conducts actions on the objective.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1003 1802-TAC-1001 1812-CBTS-2003
1812-GNRY-1007 1812-GNRY-2007 1812-TAC-1001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK–MANV–5013: Conduct a Bypass

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To maintain tempo of an attack by suppressing or breaking contact with enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Assign section to suppress enemy forces.
3. Remaining friendly forces seek covered and concealed route.
4. Remaining friendly forces use weapons standoff and obscuration to move around enemy forces.
5. Section suppressing enemy forces breaks contact and rejoins friendly forces.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.
7. Continue mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1003 1812-CBTS-2003 1812-GNRY-1007
1812-GNRY-2007 1812-TAC-1001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Tank Platoon, TOW Platoon, Scout Platoon can be tasked by HQ to conduct route reconnaissance or area reconnaissance ISO maneuver operations.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5014: Conduct a Reconnaissance by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
CONDITION:  Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD:  To force enemy forces to move or return fire.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Employ direct or indirect fires towards likely enemy positions.
3. Identify enemy location.
4. Conduct tactical movement towards enemy forces.
5. Conduct appropriate actions on contact.
6. Send report to higher headquarters.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001  1812-CBTS-2003  1812-GNRY-1007
1812-GNRY-2007  1812-TAC-1001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>300 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

UNITS/PERSONNEL:  Tank Platoon, TOW Platoon, Scout Platoon can be tasked by HQ to conduct reconnaissance or area reconnaissance ISO maneuver operations.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:  Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:  Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5015:  Conduct a Consolidation and Reorganization

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To prepare for follow on enemy contact.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Establish a hasty defense.
2. Coordinate mutual support with adjacent units.
3. Secure and evacuate enemy prisoners of war.
4. Conduct casualty evacuation as required.
5. Cross-level crewmen as required.
6. Cross-level ammunition as required.
7. Send logistics reports to higher headquarters.
8. Conduct essential maintenance.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001 1802-GNRY-1003 1802-REC-1001
1812-GNRY-1007 1812-GNRY-2007 1812-TAC-1001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5016: Defend a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To deny enemy forces from specific terrain for a specific time.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into a defending force and a counterattack force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of AO.
5. Conduct engagement area development.
6. Occupy and establish primary, alternate and supplementary positions.
7. Conduct continuing actions.
8. Defend against enemy attack.
9. Counterattack against enemy forces.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

- 1802-CBTS-1001
- 1802-GNRY-1003
- 1802-INT-1001
- 1802-INT-1002
- 1812-CBTS-2003
- 1812-GNRY-1007
- 1812-GNRY-2007
- 1812-TAC-1001
- 1812-TRNG-2001

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
- Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

---

**TANK-MANV-5017:** Conduct a Delay

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To trade enemy space for time while retaining freedom of movement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Establish contact with enemy forces.
5. Maintain contact with enemy forces without becoming decisively engaged.
6. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
1802-CBTS-1001 1812-CBTS-2003 1812-GNRY-1007
1812-GNRY-2007 1812-TAC-1001

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr</td>
<td>64 grenades per Platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
- Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
- Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

---

**TANK-MANV-5018:** Conduct a Withdrawal

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Break contact from enemy forces.
5. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

| 1802-CBTS-1001 | 1802-GNRY-1003 | 1812-CBTS-2003 |
| 1812-GNRY-1007 | 1812-GNRY-2007 | 1812-TAC-1001 |

**REFERENCES:**

1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

**TANK-MANY-5019:** Conduct a Screen

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To protect friendly force by providing early warning of enemy operations and time for friendly forces to maneuver against them.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Establish contact with enemy forces.
5. Report enemy operations to higher headquarters.
6. Maintain contact with enemy forces and develop situation as directed.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

| 1802-CBTS-1001 | 1802-INT-1002 | 1802-REC-1001 |
REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm</td>
<td>500 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber</td>
<td>300 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm</td>
<td>4 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5020: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Exchange liaison personnel between relieving unit and unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Relieving unit assumes command of AO.
7. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5021: Conduct a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Moving unit displays proper recognition signals.
3. Moving unit maintains gun tube orientation towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.
**TANK-MANV-5022:** Conduct Breaching Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To reduce a complex obstacle and provide a lane for passage of friendly units.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Identify obstacle and points of penetration.
2. Task organize into support force, assault force or breach force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Support element secures breach site by establishing suppression and obscuration at breach site.
5. Breach force reduces obstacle and proofs / marks lanes.
6. Assault force maneuvers through proofed lanes and assaults through to far side objectives.
7. Remaining friendly forces move through proofed lanes and continues mission.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
1802-CBTS-1001 1802-CBTS-1003 1802-TAC-1001  
1812-GNRY-1007 1812-GNRY-2007 1812-TAC-1001

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>450 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

**UNITS/PERSONNEL:** ABV/OCD/MCM detachments needed to execute this task.

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.
**TANK-MANV-5023**: Support an Amphibious Assault

**SUPPORTED MET(S)**: MCT 1.12.1

**EVALUATION-CODED**: YES  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a tank platoon.

**STANDARD**: To provide rapid build-up of combat power ashore.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Develop an amphibious landing plan
2. Install Fording Kits.
3. Task organize into landing serials.
4. Issue orders.
5. Conduct amphibious landing.
6. Continue assault against enemy forces.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS**:
1. 1802-CMDC-1002
2. 1802-EXPD-2001
3. 1802-EXPD-2002
4. 1802-TAC-2001
5. 1812-CMDC-2001
6. 1812-TAC-2003
7. 1812-VOPS-1006

**REFERENCES**:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
5. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
6. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
7. TM 08953A 14&P Tank Deep Water Fording Kit

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA**:
- Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
- Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

**UNITS/PERSOEONNEL**: Fording kits and Landing crafts (LCU/LCAC) required.

---

**TANK-MANV-5024**: Conduct Convoy Security Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S)**: MCT 1.6.1, MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD**: To provide close in protection to a convoy while on the move.
**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct planning from METT-TCSL assessment and convoy operations order.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct movement along assigned route.
4. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
5. Conduct short halts as required.
6. Conduct immediate action drills as required.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
- 1802-CBTS-1001
- 1802-CBTS-1002
- 1802-CBTS-2003
- 1812-CBTS-1007
- 1812-CBTS-2003
- 1812-GNRY-1007
- 1812-GNRY-2007
- 1812-TAC-1001
- 1812-TAC-2003

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
- Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
- Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
- Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex
- Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

**TANK-MANV-5025:** Conduct a Tactical movement

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To develop the situation and to establish or regain enemy contact.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct planning.
2. Apply appropriate formation.
3. Apply appropriate movement technique.
4. Change formation and movement technique as per METT-TCSL.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1002  1812-CBTS-2001  1812-TAC-1001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5026: Conduct an Exploitation

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To continue a successful attack and disorganize enemy forces in depth.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Bypass enemy forces that no longer pose a threat to rear echelon forces.
3. Destroy enemy forces that continue to pose a threat to rear echelon forces.
4. Seize enemy terrain, facilities and resources.
5. Seize enemy terrain, facilities and resources.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>600 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>170 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>170 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>500 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>10 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G940</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Green Smoke M18</td>
<td>3 grenades per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G945</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Yellow Smoke M18</td>
<td>3 grenades per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G955</td>
<td>Grenade, Hand Violet Smoke M18</td>
<td>3 grenades per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-MANV-5027: Conduct a Pursuit

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO           SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To find, fix and defeat a fleeing enemy force.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Issue FRAGO.
2. Fix enemy forces along their escape route.
3. Friendly forces maneuvers and destroys fixed enemy forces.
4. Continue pursuit until friendly forces reaches culmination point.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>700 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Tracer M856 Single</td>
<td>170 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>170 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace 700 rounds per platoon
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP 335 rounds per platoon
C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865 14 rounds per platoon
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St 3 rounds per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

TANK-GNRY-5001: Conduct Table X

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table X is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank platoon.

STANDARD: To pass all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-TSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3010 TANK-GNRY-4003

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A598 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Li</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex
OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

TANK-GNRY-5002: Conduct Table XI

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank platoon.

STANDARD: To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commander's METT-TCSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3010 TANK-GNRY-4003 TANK-GNRY-5001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>1400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>800 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>32 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex
OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

TANK-GNRY-5003: Conduct Table XII

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table XII is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank platoon.

STANDARD: To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commander's METT-TSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3010 TANK-GNRY-4003 TANK-GNRY-5001
TANK-GNRY-5002

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>1400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>800 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>20 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>8 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex
**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS</td>
<td>6-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Section and Crew level Tank unit events (4000 and 3000-Levels). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to sections and crews and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

6001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with “TANK” indicating that the event is for units in the Tank Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Section and Crew level are:

   GNRY - Gunnery

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

6002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

6003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with mechanized and motorized forces.

2. Prepares for and support platoon level offensive, defensive, and security operations.

3. Defends against air attack.

4. Processes enemy prisoners of war.
5. Executes section fire and movement.

6. Conducts route reconnaissance and participates in zone reconnaissance operations.

7. Prepares for, reacts to, and participates in operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.

8. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.

6004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Eval Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Table VII</td>
<td>6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Table VIII</td>
<td>6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-4003</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>Conduct Table IX</td>
<td>6-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Eval Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks</td>
<td>6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero Tank Main Gun</td>
<td>6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero M48 .50 caliber Machine Gun</td>
<td>6-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero Coaxial Machine Gun</td>
<td>6-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Table I</td>
<td>6-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Table II</td>
<td>6-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Table III</td>
<td>6-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3008</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Table IV</td>
<td>6-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3009</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Table V</td>
<td>6-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3010</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>Conduct Table VI</td>
<td>6-17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6005. SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

**TANK-GNRY-4001**: Conduct Table VII

**SUPPORTED MET(S)**: MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**DESCRIPTION**: Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the sections ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

**CONDITION**: Given a tank section

**STANDARD**: To pass all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the
commander's METT-TSL.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:** TANK-GNRY-3010

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
- 1802-CBTS-1001
- 1802-GNRY-1005
- 1802-GNRY-1009
- 1812-CBTS-2003
- 1812-GNRY-1005
- 1812-GNRY-2001
- 1812-TAC-1001
- 1812-TRNG-2003
- 1812-VOPS-1005

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A111</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked</td>
<td>200 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A598</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Li</td>
<td>100 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

**TANK-GNRY-4002:** Conduct Table VIII

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.1.2
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months
DESCRIPTION: Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank section.

STANDARD: To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commanders METT-TSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3010  TANK-GNRY-4001

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001  1802-GNRY-1003  1802-GNRY-1005
1802-GNRY-1006  1802-GNRY-1007  1802-GNRY-1009
1802-TAC-1001  1802-VOPS-1002  1812-CBTS-2003
1812-GNRY-1003  1812-GNRY-1004  1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006  1812-GNRY-1007  1812-GNRY-2001
1812-TRNG-2004  1812-VOPS-1005

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>700 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>400 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>16 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.
TANK-GNRY-4003: Conduct Table IX

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED:  YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table IX is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank section.

STANDARD: To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commanders METT-TSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3010  TANK-GNRY-4001  TANK-GNRY-4002

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001  1802-GNRY-1003  1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005  1802-GNRY-1006  1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1009  1802-TAC-1001  1812-CBTS-2003
1812-CMDC-2001  1812-GNRY-1003  1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005  1812-GNRY-1006  1812-GNRY-1007
1812-VOPS-1005

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>700 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>400 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>14 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028</td>
<td>1 round per section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

6006. CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

TANK-GNRY-3001: Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks

SUPPORTED MET(S):
- MCT 1.1.2
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To ensure the fire control system is operational.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Record data.

CHAINED EVENTS:
- 1802-GNRY-1010
- 1812-GNRY-2004

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

TANK-GNRY-3002: Zero Tank Main gun

SUPPORTED MET(S):
- MCT 1.1.2
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: So that the center of impact of the last round fired is within .25 mils of the aiming point.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Align GPS.
4. Fire for confirmation with KE.
5. Record data.
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for CE.
7. Align GAS.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1005 1812-GNRY-1006

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORDNANCE:</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>8 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>4 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

TANK-GNRY-3003: Zero M48 .50 caliber machine gun

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: So that the aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Boresight the weapon.
3. Zero day mode.
4. Zero thermal mode.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1007 1812-GNRY-2002
REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

TANK-GNRY-3004: Zero Coaxial Machine Gun

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2
MCT 1.6.1
MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: So that the aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Lase to a target or manually input 500 meter range.
2. Fire burst.
3. Align GPS.
4. Fire for confirmation.
5. Record data.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1006
1812-GNRY-2001

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:
TANK-GNRY-3005: Conduct Table I

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To demonstrate technical proficiencies as a tank crew.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew Roll-Over Drills.
3. Send "call for" reports.
4. Send a SPOTREP, if applicable.
5. Evacuate an injured crewman.
6. Remove/install M256 breech block.
8. Perform misfire procedures for the 120mm main gun.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1002  1802-VOPS-1004  1802-VOPS-1006
1812-GNRY-1001  1812-GNRY-1002  1812-VOPS-1003
1812-VOPS-1005  1812-VOPS-2003

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically
supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

TANK-GNRY-3006: Conduct Table II

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table II is designed to train and evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle in a simulated environment.

CONDITION: Given a gunnery training simulator.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target from a tank.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary and moving targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target with a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets with the tank mounted machine guns.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1002  1802-GNRY-1003  1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005  1802-GNRY-1006  1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1009  1802-VOPS-1002  1802-VOPS-1006
1812-GNRY-1003  1812-GNRY-1004  1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006  1812-GNRY-1007  1812-GNRY-2001
1812-VOPS-1005

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
4. TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System
5. TM 08953A-10/2 Advanced Gunnery Training System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>550 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA38</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>15 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is determined by the MSC.

TANK-GNRY-3007: Conduct Table III

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table III is designed to evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle.

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring 70 points per target on each engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing SCWS.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the tank mounted machine guns.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3005        TANK-GNRY-3006

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1003 1802-GNRY-1004 1802-GNRY-1005
1802-GNRY-1006 1802-GNRY-1007 1802-GNRY-1009
1802-VOPS-1002 1812-GNRY-1003 1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005 1812-GNRY-1006 1812-GNRY-1007
1812-VOPS-1005

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>450 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>16 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

MISCELLANEOUS:

**Administrative Instructions:** This table must be qualified dry fire prior to any live fire. Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

---

**Tank-Gnry-3008:** Conduct Table IV  
**Supported Met(s):**  
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4  
**Evaluation-Coded:** NO  **Sustainment Interval:** 6 months  
**Description:** Table IV is designed to evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle.  
**Condition:** Given a tank.  
**Standard:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.  

**Event Components:**  
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing SCWS.  
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.  
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.  
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun.  
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage stationary target utilizing the main gun.  
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.  
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.  
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing a simulated degraded fire control system.  
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or a simulated degraded fire control system.  
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the tank mounted machine guns.  

**Prerequisite Events:**  
Tank-Gnry-3005  Tank-Gnry-3006  Tank-Gnry-3007  

**Chained Events:**  
1802-Gnry-1003  1802-Gnry-1004  1802-Gnry-1005  
1802-Gnry-1006  1802-Gnry-1007  1802-Gnry-1009  
1802-Gnry-1010  1802-Vops-1002  1812-Gnry-1003
REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>450 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>6 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>3 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028</td>
<td>1 round per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

TANK-GNRY-3009: Conduct Table V

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table V is designed to train the crew to engage moving and stationary targets utilizing all vehicle weapon systems.

CONDITION: Given a tank.
STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify for the minimum of 7 of 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets with the Stabilized Commanders Weapon Station, coaxial machine gun, and loaders machine gun.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3005  TANK-GNRY-3006  TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1003  1802-GNRY-1004  1802-GNRY-1005
1802-GNRY-1006  1802-GNRY-1007  1802-GNRY-1009
1802-VOPS-1002  1812-GNRY-1003  1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005  1812-GNRY-1006  1812-GNRY-1007

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>550 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>50 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>8 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>5 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028</td>
<td>1 round per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

TANK-GNRY-3010: Conduct Table VI

SUPPORTED MET(S):

| MCT 1.1.2 | MCT 1.6.1 | MCT 1.6.4 |

EVALUATION-CODED: YES
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table VI is designed to evaluate the crew on engaging moving and stationary targets using all vehicle weapon systems while in the offensive or defensive postures.

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 total points and qualify 7 of 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple
stationary and moving targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.

7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.

8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.

9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or from a simulated degraded fire control system.

10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the commanders weapon station, coaxial machine gun, or loaders machine gun.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**
TANK-GNRY-3005  TANK-GNRY-3006  TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008  TANK-GNRY-3009

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
1802-GNRY-1003  1802-GNRY-1004  1802-GNRY-1005
1802-GNRY-1006  1802-GNRY-1007  1802-GNRY-1009
1802-VOPS-1002  1812-GNRY-1003  1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005  1812-GNRY-1006  1812-GNRY-1007

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>450 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>50 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDF-T M865</td>
<td>8 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>9 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).
### MOS 1802 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>7000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING.</td>
<td>7001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.</td>
<td>7002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREREQUISITES</td>
<td>7003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES.</td>
<td>7004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL</td>
<td>7005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>7006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>7007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Tank Officer. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident/distance learning PME.

7001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1802" indicating that the event is for Tank Officers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for Tank Officers are:

   GNRY - Gunnery
   VOPS - Vehicle Operations
   CSS - Combat Service Support
   CMDC - Command and Control
   TAC - Tactical Operation
   MANV- Maneuver

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

7002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external support requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

7003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine Tank Officer will have completed The Basic School (TBS) and Mounted Basic Officer Leader Course (MBOLC).

7004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The Tank Officer will complete the Maneuver Basic Officer Leaders Course (MBOLC) at Fort Benning Ga. Upon graduation, the Tank Officer will conduct additional Level 2000 training in a Tank unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through
completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident and seminar courses.

2. **BILLET: Tank Platoon Commander.** The Tank Platoon Commander carries out the orders of the Tank Company Commander. He is proficient with all T/O weapons within his platoon. He is responsible for training his unit to perform METs assigned by his company commander's METLs. He is responsible for deployment and tactical employment of his unit. He is responsible for the discipline, morale, and welfare of his unit. A Lieutenant holds the Tank Platoon Commander billet.

   a. Core Capabilities

      (1) Trains the platoon in the performance of tasks that support company training objectives.

      (2) Maintains the welfare and discipline of a platoon.

      (3) Makes operational planning recommendations to the Tank Company Commander.

      (4) Develops a 5-paragraph operations order to support accomplishment of a tank company's tactical mission.

      (5) Prepares a map overlay.

      (6) Prepares platoon reports and briefs.

      (7) Proficient in use and employment of all weapons organic to a tank platoon.

      (8) Engages targets utilizing all organic weapon systems on the M1A1 Tank.

      (9) Supervises preventive maintenance checks and services of all platoon tanks and equipment.

      (10) Utilizes pyrotechnics for signaling and on-board systems for screening.

      (11) Land navigates to designated points using a topographic map, lensatic compass, protractor, and global positioning equipment while dismounted and mounted.

      (12) Performs self-aid and buddy aid.

      (13) Assumes mission oriented protective posture against the effects of chemical and biological agents.

      (14) Communicates using proper communications procedures with organic wired and wireless communications.

      (15) Calls for indirect fire.
(16) Requests close air support.

(17) Integrates supporting fires in accomplishment of an assigned mission.

(18) Capable of preparing all stations on the M1A1 tank for operation.

(19) Leads the platoon in tactical operations as part of a tank company.

(20) Proficient marksman with T/O weapon.

(21) Capable of performing operator maintenance for, and is proficient in employment of, the mine blade, mine plow, and deep water fording kit.

(22) Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.

3. BILLET: Tank Company Executive Officer. Second most senior 1802 in the tank company. Assumes command in commander's absence.

   a. Core Capabilities

   (1) Makes operational planning recommendations to company commander on unit training and operations.

   (2) Oversees unit training and operations.

   (3) Oversees range operations.

   (4) Oversees unit logistical support and requirements.

   (5) Trains Tank platoon commanders in performance of duties.

   (6) Oversees the conduct and supervises ancillary training events.

   (7) Performs duties as the company FIST team leader.

4. BILLET: Tank Company Commander. The Tank Company Commander responsible to the commanding officer of the tank battalion, supported infantry regiment, or battalion and becomes a special staff officer to the supported infantry commander. The Tank Company Commander leads three platoons and a headquarters section. He is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and all associated collateral gear including additional support equipment.

   a. Core Capabilities

   (1) Directs the logistics support organic to the tank company in support of his Tanks.

   (2) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his company.
(3) Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of Tank unit.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical and maintenance requirements for Tank unit.

(5) Employs operational safety procedures.

(6) Trains and supervises platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support battalion training objectives.

(7) Responsible for overall preventative and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.

5. **BILLET: Battalion Operations Officer.** Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion training and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

   a. **Core Capabilities:**

   (1) Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training and tactical operations of a tank battalion.

   (2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support of units.

   (3) Responsible for determining priorities for allocation of personnel, weapons, equipment and ammunition.

   (4) Makes operational planning recommendations to the battalion commander.

6. **BILLET: Battalion Logistics Officer.** Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion logistical requirements and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

   a. **Core Capabilities**

   (1) Assumes staff responsibility for determining logistical requirements, support, and operations for a Tank battalion.

   (2) Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising logistical support of Tank units.

   (3) Makes logistical planning recommendations to the battalion commander.

7. **BILLET: Battalion Executive Officer.** Second most senior 1802 officer in the battalion. Assumes command in battalion commander's absence. Responsible for managing and coordinating the battalion staff and administrative tasks.
a. Core Capabilities

(1) Coordinates all actions of the battalion staff.

(2) Supervises staff planning process.

(3) Ensures battalion reports are made as required to higher and adjacent commanders.

(4) Maintains information flow to battalion commander.

(5) Supervises the battalion’s maintenance program.

8. BILLET: Battalion Commanding Officer. The Tank Battalion Commander leads a tank battalion as an independent maneuver element and is responsible to the Commanding General of the Marine Division.

a. Core Capabilities

(1) Advises supported unit commander on employment of Tank unit.

(2) Responsible for the vehicle preventive and corrective maintenance.

(3) Responsible for the training of personnel in the performance of tasks which support division training objectives.

(4) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for Tank unit.

(5) Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the battalion.

(6) Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for the Tank unit.

(7) Directs organic combat training and logistical operations in support of subordinate units.

(8) Leads tank battalion as an independent maneuver element.

7005. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EVENT CODE</th>
<th>EVENT</th>
<th>PAGES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0002-CBTS-2001</td>
<td>Employ a Fire Support Team (FiST)</td>
<td>7-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0002-CSS-2001</td>
<td>Supervise Quartering Party Operations</td>
<td>7-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0002-EXPD-2001</td>
<td>Advise Supported Unit Commander in the Conduct of Amphibious Operations</td>
<td>7-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0002-EXPD-2002</td>
<td>Conduct Amphibious Operations</td>
<td>7-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0002-VOPS-2001</td>
<td>Supervise Maintenance on Auxiliary Equipment</td>
<td>7-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0002-VOPS-2002</td>
<td>Supervise the operation of the Mine Clearing Blade</td>
<td>7-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-TAC-2001</td>
<td>Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment</td>
<td>7-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

| 1802-CBTS-1001 | Employ Fire Support | 7-12 |
| 1802-CBTS-1002 | Plan Mobility Operations | 7-13 |
| 1802-CBTS-1003 | Plan a Breach | 7-14 |
| 1802-INT-1001 | Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) | 7-14 |
| 1802-INT-1002 | Execute Intelligence Collection Effort | 7-15 |
| 1802-CMDC-1001 | Execute Deception Plan | 7-15 |
| 1802-CMDC-1002 | Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of Tanks | 7-16 |
| 1802-CMDC-1003 | Communicate Using Visual Signals | 7-16 |
| 1802-CMDC-1004 | Conduct Unit Training | 7-17 |
| 1802-GNRY-1001 | Conduct Gunnery Skills Test | 7-17 |
| 1802-GNRY-1002 | Perform individual actions as tank commander, Table I. | 7-18 |
| 1802-GNRY-1003 | Perform the engagement process. | 7-19 |
| 1802-GNRY-1004 | Perform individual actions to unload Stuck Main Gun Round. | 7-19 |
| 1802-GNRY-1005 | Perform individual action to Zero 120mm Main Gun. | 7-20 |
| 1802-GNRY-1006 | Zero Coaxial Zero M240 7.62mm Machine Gun | 7-21 |
| 1802-GNRY-1007 | Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun. | 7-21 |
| 1802-GNRY-1008 | Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station | 7-22 |
| 1802-GNRY-1009 | Perform individual actions to conduct Armament Accuracy Checks | 7-23 |
| 1802-VOPS-1001 | Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services | 7-23 |
| 1802-VOPS-1002 | Prepare, Operate, and Secure Tank commanders station | 7-24 |
| 1802-VOPS-1003 | Perform individual actions to recover Tank | 7-25 |
| 1802-VOPS-1004 | Perform individual actions for emergency procedures on a Tank. | 7-25 |
| 1802-VOPS-1005 | Supervise Tank Recovery Operations | 7-26 |
| 1802-VOPS-1005 | Conduct Abandon Tank Drill | 7-27 |
| 1802-TAC-1001 | Plan Offensive Operations | 7-27 |
| 1802-REC-1001 | Plan Reconnaissance Operations | 7-28 |

### 7006. 2000-LEVEL EVENTS

**1802-CBTS-2001:** Employ a Fire Support Team (FiST)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT
**CONDITION:** Given a FiST with appropriate equipment and an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To provide fires in support of the ground scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Determine fire support requirement.
2. Develop fire support plan.
3. Execute fire support plan.

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
5. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
6. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
7. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

**1802-CSS-2001:** Supervise Quartering Party Operations

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Conduct route reconnaissance and site survey of intended AA, and coordinate movement of unit into AA, providing security prior to and during movement.

**BILLETs:** Executive Officer, Logistics Officer

**GRADES:** 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank unit and an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To ensure the unit has a clear route to the established Assembly Area.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Issue Warning Order to Quartering Party personnel.
2. Task organize Quartering Party.
3. Establish security element and conduct patrol of area to determine level of enemy activity in the immediate area.
4. Conduct site survey to determine operational requirements of AA.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-EXPD-2001: Advice Supported Unit Commander in the Conduct of Amphibious Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Company Commander, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit and an operations order.

STANDARD: So that all tank specific considerations are addressed in the planning phase.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assist in the embarkation plan.
2. Assist in developing the landing plan.
3. Assist in planning an amphibious operations.

REFERENCES:
1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. LFMO 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
5. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
6. MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
7. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
8. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
9. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
12. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
13. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)
14. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
15. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-EXPD-2002: Conduct Amphibious Operations
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Company Commander, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit and an operations order.

STANDARD: To meet commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Supervise the installation of deep water fording kits.
2. Inspect units embarkation procedures.
3. Supervise embarkation and debarkation of units onto and from amphibious shipping.
4. Lead an amphibious withdrawal.

REFERENCES:
1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
5. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
6. MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
7. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
8. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
9. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
10. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
11. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
12. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
13. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)
14. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
15. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1802-VOPS-2001: Supervise Maintenance on Auxiliary Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Executive Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

7-10 Enclosure (1)
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a Tank.

STANDARD: To ensure operation of the tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct vehicle inspection of Tank Unit.
2. Inspect completed maintenance work.
3. Supervise equipment maintenance.
4. Supervise maintenance related programs.

REFERENCES:
1. MCO P4790.2C MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
2. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
5. TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)
6. TM 11-5985-262-14 Antenna AS 1729/VRC
7. TM 3-4230-204-12&P Operator's Manual for M11 PDA
10. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
13. TM 9-1005-262-15 MAINTENANCE MANUAL, 7.62 MM MACHINEGUN M60D

1802-VOPS-2002: Supervise the operation of the Mine Clearing Blade

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank with mine clearing blade.
STANDARD: So that a lane is established through the minefield.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct pre-operational checks.
2. Direct the employment of the mine clearing blade.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank

1802-TAC-2001: Advice Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLET: Battalion Commander, Company Commander, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, a supported unit, operations order, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for operations in jungles, heavy forests, deserts, urban terrain, mountains, CBRN environment, and cold weather.
2. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for stability operations.
3. Advise on tank infantry operations.
4. Advise on the conduct of river fording operations.
5. Advise on CSS requirements for operations.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
4. MCWP 3-35.1 Cold Weather Operations
5. MCWP 3-35.2 Mountain Operations
6. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
7. MCWP 3-35.5 Jungle Operations
8. MCWP 3-35.6 Desert Operations

7007. 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

1802-CBTS-1001: Employ Fire Support
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order and a fire support plan.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine available fire support assets.
2. Determine fire support requirements.
3. Establish communication with the supporting agency.
4. Request fires from supporting agency.
5. Adjust fires as needed.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1802-CBTS-1002: Plan Mobility Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate employment in support of mobility operations.
2. Coordinate employment of tanks support of countermobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support for survivability operations.
REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. FM 5-102 Countermobility
5. FM 5-103 Survivability
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)

1802-CBTS-1003: Plan a Breach

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order.

STANDARD: In order to support the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Plan and coordinate to Suppress, Obscure, Secure, Reduce, and Resupply in support of breaching operations.
2. Plan to direct unit through obstacle.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

1802-INT-1001: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order and a map of the battle space.

STANDARD: To develop a Modified Combined Operations Overlay (MCOO) and graphically depict all available intelligence within the Area of Operation (AO) and Area of Interest (AI).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Gather all required intelligence.
2. Apply IPB.
3. Integrate into operation order.
REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
6. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
7. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
8. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
9. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
10. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

1802-INT-1002: Execute Intelligence Collection Effort

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order and map of the battlespace.

STANDARD: To gather information and data to meet Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIRs).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify collection assets.
2. Conduct collection.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
3. GTA 17-2-13 Armored Vehicle Recognition Cards
4. GTA 17-2-9 Combat Vehicle Identification
5. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
6. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1001: Execute Deception Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order.

STANDARD: To minimize detection.
**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Employ passive and active camouflage measures.
2. Enforce EMCON procedures.
3. Execute specific measures assigned in support of deception plan.

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-17.6A Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys
3. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

---

**1802-CMDC-1002:** Advice Supported Unit Commander on Employment of Tanks

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order.

**STANDARD:** In order to maximize support provided.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Conduct mission analysis and determine the missions and task assignments for the various elements.
2. Advise the unit commander and his staff on characteristics, capabilities, and limitations of tank unit to best support scheme of maneuver.

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

---

**1802-CMDC-1003:** Communicate Using Visual Signals

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and associated SL-3.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver a tank using non-verbal communication.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Communicate using hand and arm signals to control vehicles.
2. Communicate using flashlights to control vehicles.
3. Communicate using flags to control vehicles.
4. Identify standard flags, lights, and markers used to control armored vehicles

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-CMDC-1004: Conduct Unit Training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit

STANDARD: To meet unit training objectives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Plan unit training.
2. Implement unit training.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

1802-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank and all associated training devices.

STANDARD: To pass all tests in accordance with TC 3-20.1-01.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles and Theater Threat Vehicles.
2. Identify Ammunition.
3. Clear, disassemble, assemble, perform function check, load, perform
immediate action, on M240 7.62 Machine Gun.

4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on M48 caliber .50 Machine Gun with M10 Charger.

5. Perform MRS update.

6. Reload Main Gun.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

1802-GNRY-1002: Perform individual actions as tank commander for Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Tank and all associated equipment.

STANDARD: To complete all 8 performance tasks in accordance with TC 3-20.1-01 prior to conducting live fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew Roll Over Drills.
3. Send "call for" reports.
4. Send a SPOTREP, if applicable.
5. Evacuate an injured crewman.
6. Remove/install M256 breech block.
8. Perform misfire procedures for the 120mm main gun.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
1802-GNRY-1003: Perform the engagement process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To destroy or neutralize a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-04 Detect Identify Decide Engage and Assess (DIDEA)
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1802-GNRY-1004: Perform individual actions to unload Stuck Main Gun Round.

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.
STANDARD: To return Main Gun back to operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify stuck round.
2. Remove stuck round.

REFERENCES:

1802-GNRY-1005: Perform individual actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS Performing: 1802

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank and references.

STANDARD: So that center of impact of the last round fired is within .25 mils of the aiming point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Align GPS.
4. Fire for confirmation with KE.
5. Record data.
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for CE.
7. Align GAS.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CA31 Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002 4 rounds per tank

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle  
Multipurpose Range Complex

---

**1802-GNRY-1006:** Zero Coaxial Zero M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a stationary tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So the reticule aiming point is centered in the strike area.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Prepare the gunners station.
2. Operate gunners station.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams
4. TM 08953A-10/1-3 Operator's Manual, Volume 3 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-  
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>100 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle  
Multipurpose Range Complex

---

**1802-GNRY-1007:** Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.
STANDARD: So the reticule aiming points are centered in the strike area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Boresight the weapon.
3. Zero day mode.
4. Zero thermal mode.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50</td>
<td>100 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

1802-GNRY-1008: Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary tank with a three-man crew and targets.

STANDARD: Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare tank commanders station.
2. Operate tank commanders station.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>200 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1802-GNRY-1009: Perform individual actions to conduct Armament Accuracy Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To ensure the fire control system is operational.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Record data.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

1802-VOPS-1001: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO
SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank, and all associated SL-3.

STANDARD: To ensure the operational readiness of the Tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct vehicle inspection of Tank Unit.
2. Inspect completed maintenance work.
4. Supervise equipment maintenance.
5. Supervise maintenance related programs.

REFERENCES:
1. LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank
2. MCO 4400.16 Uniform Material Movement and Issue Priority System (UMMIPS)
3. MCO P4790.2C MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
4. NAVMC 10245 Equipment Repair Order (ERO)
5. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
10. TM 4700-15/1 Ground Equipment Record Procedures
15. UM 4400-124 SASSY Using Unit Procedures

1802-VOPS-1002: Prepare, Operate, and Secure Tank commanders station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Tank, SL-3, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure operation of the Tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare commanders Station.
2. Operate commanders Station.
3. Secure commanders Station.

REFERENCES:

1802-VOPS-1003: Perform individual actions to recover Tank.

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled tank requiring recovery.

STANDARD: To return the tank to operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled vehicle for recovery.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Use additional vehicles if required.
5. Tow disabled tank.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations

1802-VOPS-1004: Perform individual actions for emergency procedures on a Tank.

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL
CONDITION: Given an emergency.

STANDARD: To prevent injury to personnel or further damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Service air cleaner after CBRN attack.
2. Perform immediate action for loss of engine power.
3. Perform immediate action for loss of steering.
4. Perform immediate action for loss of service brakes.
5. Unlock stuck parking brake.
6. Open Breech block.
7. Close Breech block.
8. Perform immediate action for engine failure to shut down.
9. Perform immediate action for starter failure to disengage.
11. Perform immediate action for vehicle master power failure to power down.
12. Decontaminate tank.
13. Verify operational readiness of fire control system following a nuclear explosion.
15. Use battle over ride.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon

1802-VOPS-1005: Supervise Tank Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank unit, a disabled tank capable of being towed.

STANDARD: Using self recovery techniques or other recovery assets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Direct local security.
2. Secure disabled vehicle.
3. Analyze situation.
4. Order recovery of vehicle.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
4. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations

1802-VOPS-1006: Conduct Abandon Tank Drill

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To evacuate the crew in the event of a hit to the turret bustle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Assess situation.
2. Give order to abandon tank.
3. Perform destruction procedures.
4. Assemble and account for crew.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1802-TAC-1001: Plan Offensive Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order from higher.

STANDARD: In order to support the scheme of maneuver.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise supported unit commander on tank employment considerations.
2. Receive the commander's order.
4. Issue warning order.
5. Coordinate and prepare.
6. Make reports, as required.
8. Execute mission.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
3. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
6. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
7. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support

1802-REC-1001: Plan Reconnaissance Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order from higher and references.

STANDARD: In order to support the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine requirements for a zone reconnaissance.
2. Determine requirements for an area reconnaissance.
3. Determine requirements for a route reconnaissance.
4. Determine requirements for a screen, guard, and/or cover.
5. Determine requirements for reconnaissance in force.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
8. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
# MOS 1812 INDIVIDUAL EVENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>8001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>8002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREREQUISITES</td>
<td>8003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BILLET DESCRIPTION/ CORE CAPABILITIES</td>
<td>8004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS BY LEVEL</td>
<td>8005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>8006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>8007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Tank Crewman. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident career progression training.

8001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one – Each event in this chapter begins with “1812” indicating that the event is for Tank Crewmen.

b. Field two – This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for Tank Crewmen are:

   - GNRY – Gunnery
   - VOPS – Vehicle Operations
   - CSS – Combat Service Support
   - TAC – Tactical Operation
   - RNGE – Range
   - EXPD – Expeditionary Operations
   - CMDC – Command and Control
   - CBTS – Combat Support
   - OTH – Other
   - OPS – Operations
   - TRNG – Training
   - REC – Reconnaissance

c. Field three – This field provides numerical sequencing.

8002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

8003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine 1812 Tank Crewman will have completed the Marine Armor Crewman Course before reporting to a Tank Battalion.

8004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES
1. CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The Tank Crewman will complete the Marine Armor Crewman Course. Upon graduation the Tank Crewman will conduct additional Level 2000 training in a tank unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

2. BILLET: Tank Crewman. The Tank Crewman carries out the orders of the Tank Platoon Commander. He is proficient with all T/O weapons on the M1A1 tank and first echelon preventive maintenance checks and services. He is responsible for executing all duties commensurate with the tactical and technical responsibilities as an M1A1 tank crewman.

   a. Core Capabilities

      (1) Proficient in use and employment of all weapons organic to the M1A1 tank.

      (2) Engages targets utilizing all organic weapon systems on the M1A1 tank.

      (3) Conducts preventive maintenance checks and services on assigned tanks and equipment.

      (4) Performs self-aid and buddy aid.

      (5) Assumes mission oriented protective posture against the effects of chemical and biological agents.

      (6) Communicates using proper communications procedures with organic wired and wireless communications.

      (7) Capable of preparing driver’s, loader’s, and gunner’s stations on the M1A1 tank for operation.

      (8) Conducts tactical operations as part of a tank platoon.

      (9) Proficient marksman with T/O weapon.

      (10) Capable of performing operator maintenance for, and is proficient in employment of, mine plow, mine blade, and deep water fording kit.

      (11) Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.

      (12) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

      (13) Maintains ordnance vehicle log book.

      (14) Proficient at recovery operations.

      (15) Camouflages M1A1 tank.
3. **BILLET: Tank Commander.** Senior 1812 Crewman on the tank. The Tank Commander leads a crew of four and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the tank and all associated collateral gear. The Tank Commander operates the Tank Commanders Weapons Station.

   a. Core Capabilities:

   (1) Responsible for Tank crewman.

   (2) Maintains vehicle administrative documents.

   (3) Executes Section Leader’s commands related to employment and function of the Tank.

   (4) Conducts tactical operations as part of a tank platoon.

   (5) Proficient marksman with T/O weapon.

   (6) Capable of performing operator maintenance for, and is proficient in employment of, mine plow, mine blade, and deep water fording kit.

   (7) Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.

   (8) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

   (9) Maintains ordnance vehicle log book.

   (10) Proficient at recovery operations.

4. **BILLET: Section Leader.** Senior 1812 Crewman in the Tank Section who leads all vehicles crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section.

   a. Core Capabilities:

   (1) Responsible for tank crewman within section.

   (2) Executes Platoon Commander’s commands related to employment and function of the tank section.

   (3) Conducts tactical operations as part of a tank platoon.

   (4) Proficient marksman with T/O weapon.

   (5) Capable of performing operator maintenance for, and is proficient in employment of, mine plow, mine blade, and deep water fording kit.

   (6) Proficient in proper combat reporting procedures.

   (7) Proficient at identifying threat and friendly combat vehicles and aircraft.

   (8) Proficient at recovery operations.
5. **BILLET: Tank Platoon Sergeant.** Senior 1812 and second in command of the Tank Platoon. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon’s vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the Tank Platoon Commander on training, welfare, and administrative issues.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Responsible for tank crewman within platoon.

      (2) Responsible for vehicles and collateral equipment within platoon.

      (3) Audits administrative documents and assists in all maintenance management functions of the platoon.

      (4) Proficient marksman with T/O weapon.

      (5) Advises supported unit commander.

      (6) Assumes command in Platoon Commanders absence.

      (7) Coordinates logistical support for the tank platoon.

      (8) Proficient at recovery operations.

      (9) Conducts tactical operations as part of a tank platoon.

6. **BILLET: Company Master Gunner.** The Company Master Gunner has completed the M1A1 Master Gunners course and is responsible to the Company Commander for the training and employment of M1A1 weapons systems. This is a SSgt’s billet.

   a. Core Capabilities:

      (1) Advises the Company Commander in all matters pertaining to tank gunnery and employment of all weapons systems with-in the Company.

      (2) Evaluates and grades the company tank crews during their semi-annual pre-qualification tables (Gun Tables II-V).

      (3) As the company ammunition SNCO, allocates ammunition based on the company's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin / plan and reallocate ammunition as needed to support all unit training requirements.

      (4) Acts as company liaison to the battalion on all matters pertaining to Range/MPRC as well as all other ranges and training locations aboard the base.

      (5) Mentors, advises and assists the company in tank gunnery sustainment, tank gunnery preparation, and the Gunnery Skills Tests (GST).

      (6) Serves as the company Senior Instructor Operator for the Advanced Gunnery Training System simulator ensuring that all tank crews qualify through the crew training program.
7. **Billet: Company Tank Leader.** Senior 1812 Marine in the tank company. Advises the company commander on training, logistics, and operations of the tank company.

   a. Core Capabilities

   (1) Advises the company commander in monitoring, conducting, reporting, and supervising unit training.

   (2) Coordinates and Evaluates Company individual and unit training.

   (3) Conducts quartering party operations.

   (4) Coordinates COC setup and operations.

   (5) Coordinates assembly area activities.

   (6) Assists the Executive officer in planning future operations.

   (7) Advises the tank company commander on all 1812 Marine matters.

   (8) Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.

   (9) Trains tank Platoon Sergeants in performance of duties.

   (10) Mentors the Staff Non Commissioned Officers of the Company.

   (11) Coordinates logistical support.

8. **Billet: Battalion Master Gunner.** The Battalion Master Gunner is the senior Master Gunner billet in the Tank Battalion. He is responsible to the Battalion Commander for the training and employment of all M1A1 weapons systems. He will oversee and mentor the Company Master Gunners. This is a GySgt’s billet.

   a. Core Capabilities:

   (1) Advises the Battalion Commander and the Operations Officer in all matters pertaining to tank gunnery and employment of all weapons systems within the battalion.

   (2) Accurately evaluates and grades the battalion's tank crews during their semi-annual tank table VI qualification. Assist company commanders in the development of collective tables.

   (3) As the battalion ammunition SNCO, allocate ammunition based on the battalion's annual training plan and quarterly training bulletin/plan and reallocate ammunition as needed to support all unit training requirements.

   (4) Serves as battalion liaison to range operations on all matters pertaining to Range/MPRC as well as all other ranges/training locations aboard the base.
(5) Mentors, advises and assists the company master gunners in tank gunnery sustainment, tank gunnery preparation, and the GST.

(6) Serves as the Battalion Senior Instructor Operator for the Advanced Gunnery Training System simulator ensuring that all tank crews qualify through the crew training program.

9. **BILLET: Battalion Logistics Chief.** Second most senior 1812 Marine in the battalion.

   a. Core Capabilities

      (1) Advises the logistics officer on unit logistical requirements.

      (2) Coordinates battalion logistical support.

      (3) Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.

      (4) Determines logistical requirements for unit training.

      (5) Coordinates battalion embarkation plans.

      (6) Monitors battalion hazardous material section.

      (7) Coordinates logistics operations center (LOC) setup and operations.

      (8) Serves as senior enlisted in LOC.

10. **BILLET: Battalion Operations Chief.** Senior 1812 Marine in the battalion.

    a. Core Capabilities

       (1) Advises the operations officer on unit training.

       (2) Coordinates battalion individual and unit training.

       (3) Coordinates COC setup and operations.

       (4) Serves as senior enlisted Marine in combat operations center.

       (5) Coordinates assembly area activities.

       (6) Evaluates individual and unit training.

       (7) Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.

       (8) Assists the operations officer in planning future operations.

       (9) Advises the tank battalion commander on all 1812 Marine matters.
# Index of Individual Events

## 2000-Level Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2001</td>
<td>Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun</td>
<td>8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2002</td>
<td>Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2003</td>
<td>Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2004</td>
<td>Perform individual actions to conduct Armament Accuracy Checks</td>
<td>8-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2005</td>
<td>Identify Error Sources</td>
<td>8-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2006</td>
<td>Employ the Engagement Process</td>
<td>8-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-INT-2001</td>
<td>Conduct Intelligence Operations</td>
<td>8-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CMDC-2001</td>
<td>Plan Operations</td>
<td>8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CMDC-2002</td>
<td>Perform Duties as Battalion Operations Chief</td>
<td>8-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CMDC-2003</td>
<td>Conduct Unit Training</td>
<td>8-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CMDC-2004</td>
<td>Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop</td>
<td>8-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-VOPS-2001</td>
<td>Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services</td>
<td>8-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-VOPS-2002</td>
<td>Supervise Tank Recovery Operations</td>
<td>8-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-VOPS-2003</td>
<td>Supervise abandon tank procedure</td>
<td>8-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-VOPS-2004</td>
<td>Supervise Maintenance on Auxiliary Equipment</td>
<td>8-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-VOPS-2005</td>
<td>Perform duties as Tank Leader</td>
<td>8-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CBTS-2001</td>
<td>Plan Mobility Operations</td>
<td>8-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CBTS-2002</td>
<td>Plan a Breach</td>
<td>8-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CBTS-2003</td>
<td>Employ Fire Support</td>
<td>8-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CSS-2001</td>
<td>Monitor Unit Table of Organization and Equipment Modification (T/O&amp;E) Procedures</td>
<td>8-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CSS-2002</td>
<td>Conduct Combat Service and Support</td>
<td>8-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-CSS-2003</td>
<td>Perform the Duties of a Logistics Chief</td>
<td>8-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-TAC-2001</td>
<td>Conduct Quartering Party Operations</td>
<td>8-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-TAC-2003</td>
<td>Advise Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment</td>
<td>8-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-EXPD-2001</td>
<td>Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPP)</td>
<td>8-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-EXPD-2002</td>
<td>Plan Transportation Support for a Unit Operation</td>
<td>8-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-RNGE-2001</td>
<td>Develop surface danger zones (SD2s)</td>
<td>8-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-RNGE-2002</td>
<td>Design ranges in support of expeditionary operations</td>
<td>8-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-TRNG-2001</td>
<td>Teach employment of individual weapons</td>
<td>8-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-TRNG-2002</td>
<td>Facilitate simulation training program</td>
<td>8-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-TRNG-2003</td>
<td>Manage the unit gunnery training program</td>
<td>8-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-TRNG-2004</td>
<td>Manage ammunition resources</td>
<td>8-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-OPS-2001</td>
<td>Perform duties as a special staff member to the battalion commander</td>
<td>8-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-REC-2001</td>
<td>Plan Reconnaissance Operations</td>
<td>8-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-OTH-2001</td>
<td>Qualify using the M9 Service Pistol</td>
<td>8-31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 1000-Level Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1812-CMDC-1001</td>
<td>Communicate Using Visual Signals</td>
<td>8-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1001</td>
<td>Conduct Gunnery Skills Test</td>
<td>8-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1002</td>
<td>Perform individual actions as assigned crew member for Gun Table I.</td>
<td>8-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1003</td>
<td>Perform individual actions to unload Stuck Main Gun Round</td>
<td>8-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1004</td>
<td>Unload Stuck Stub Base from Main Gun</td>
<td>8-34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8006. 2000-LEVEL EVENTS

**1812-GNRY-2001:** Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETs:** Gunner, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming point is centered in the strike area.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Prepare the gunners' station.
2. Operate gunners' station.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>100 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex
1812-GNRY-2002: Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETs: Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: So the reticle aiming points are centered in the strike area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Boresight the weapon.
3. Zero day mode.
4. Zero thermal mode.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50</td>
<td>4 API M8/1 AP 100 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

1812-GNRY-2003: Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETs: Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: In order to provide obscuration for the vehicle.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect grenade discharger.
2. Load smoke grenades.
3. Power up commander's station.
4. Operate M250/M257 grenade launcher system.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr</td>
<td>16 grenades per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

1812-GNRY-2004: Perform individual actions to conduct Armament Accuracy Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To ensure the fire control system is operational.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Record data.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams


**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** AAC solution board.

---

**1812-GNRY-2005:** Identify Error Sources

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** In order to ensure accuracy of main gun.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Conduct calibration policy.
2. Identify fixed biases.
3. Identify variable biases.
4. Identify random errors.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

---

**1812-GNRY-2007:** Employ the Engagement Process

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To destroy or neutralize the threat.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-04 Detect Identify Decide Engage and Assess (DIDEA)
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1812-INT-2001: Conduct Intelligence Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Warning order.

STANDARD: To develop the operations order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct Intelligence preparation of the battlefield.
2. Execute intelligence collection effort.
3. Execute information dissemination plan.
4. Execute deception plan.
5. Support counterintelligence effort.
6. Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-20 Camouflage
3. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
4. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
5. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence

1812-CMDC-2001: Plan Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: The purpose of this task is to develop a concept of support for an operation and advise the unit commander.

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order.

STANDARD: To direct the actions of a tank unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Analyze higher operations order.
2. Advise supported unit commander on tank employment.
3. Conduct estimate of supportability.
4. Develop operations order.
5. Issue operations order.
6. Conduct rehearsals.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP)
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

1812-CMDC-2002: Perform Duties as Battalion Operations Chief

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank battalion's TEEP, training directives, and Battalion Commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To support the unit commander's intent.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct Unit Training Management.
2. Evaluate MOS Related Training Effectiveness.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

1812-CMDC-2003: Conduct Unit Training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit's training schedule, Commander's guidance, a tank unit.

STANDARD: To meet training objectives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Develop unit training schedule.
2. Supervise unit training schedule.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

1812-CMDC-2004: Install a Wire Communications Hot Loop

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given two or more stationary tanks and communication wire WD-1/TT.

STANDARD: So that communications between tanks can be made without emitting radio signals.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Ensure VEHICLE MASTER POWER switch is set to ON.
2. Turn on Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.
3. Connect one wire end to each TEL/REMOTE POST on the Indicator Control CD-82/VRC.
4. Run connected wire to next tank to be connected in the same manner.
5. Conduct a communications check external to the tank to verify that the last loop is operational.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TM 08636A-14/1 USMC Technical Manual, Intercom Set AN/VIC-2(V)

1812-VOPS-2001: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO   SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank, and all associated SL-3.

STANDARD: To ensure the operational readiness of the Tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct vehicle inspection of Tank Unit.
3. Inspect DA FORM 2404.
4. Order operational checks of material.
5. Supervise equipment maintenance.
6. Supervise maintenance related programs.
7. Inspect completed maintenance work.
8. Maintain weapon record data.

REFERENCES:
1. LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank
2. MCO 4400.16 Uniform Material Movement and Issue Priority System (UMMIPS)
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
7. TM 08953A-14&P Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List, Deep Water Fording Kit
8. TM 11- OPERATOR'S MANUAL FOR AN/PVS-7B
12. TM 11-5985-262-14 Antenna AS 1729/VRC
13. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
17. UM 4400-124 SASSY Using Unit Procedure

1812-VOPS-2002: Supervise Tank Recovery Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled tank capable of being towed.

STANDARD: Using self recovery techniques or other recovery assets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Locate the disabled vehicle.
2. Establish local security.
3. Conduct estimate of the situation.
4. Rig vehicle for towing as required.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
3. MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair

1812-VOPS-2003: Supervise abandon tank procedure

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To evacuate the crew in the event of a hit to the turret bustle.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Assess situation.
2. Give order to abandon tank.
3. Perform destruction procedures.
4. Assemble and account for crew.

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

**1812-VOPS-2004:** Supervise Maintenance on Auxiliary Equipment

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given a Tank.

**STANDARD:** To ensure operation of the tank.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Conduct vehicle inspection of Tank Unit.
2. Inspect completed maintenance work.
4. Supervise work request.
5. Supervise equipment maintenance.
6. Supervise maintenance related programs.
7. Supervise equipment maintenance.
8. Supervise maintenance related programs.
9. Maintain weapon record data.
REFERENCE:

6. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
8. TM 11-5820-890-10-2 SINCGARS ICOM Ground Radio Operators Pocket Guide for Manpack
10. TM 11-5825-283-10 Operator's Manual for Manpack Radio Sets AN/ASQ-177C(V)4; AN/PQ-6C; AN/VSQ-2C(V)1; AN/VSQ-2C(V)2; AN/VSQ-2C(V)4
11. TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)

1812-VOPS-2005: Perform duties as Tank Leader

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a Tank unit.

STANDARD: To ensure operation of the Tank unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Manage Unit Training.
2. Manage Unit Combat Service and Support.
3. Manage organizational maintenance.
4. Advise the Commander on Unit combat operations.
5. Manage Unit Table of Organization and Equipment.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCO 4400.172 Table of Equipment (T/E) Allowance Change Procedures
1812-CBTS-2001: Plan Mobility Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operations order and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate employment of mobility in support of mobility operations.
2. Coordinate employment of tanks in construction, observation, and suppression of obstacles in support of counter-mobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support required by tank units as part of survivability operations.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
3. FM 5-101 Mobility
4. FM 5-102 Countermobility
5. FM 5-103 Survivability
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

1812-CBTS-2002: Plan a Breach

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operations order.

STANDARD: In order to support the scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Plan and coordinate to Suppress, Obscure, Secure, Reduce, and Resupply in support of breaching operations.
2. Plan to direct unit crossing of minefield.
3. Submit COAs.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

1812-CBTS-2003: Employ Fire Support

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operations order and a fire support plan.

STANDARD: To support the ground scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine available fire support assets.
2. Determine fire support requirements.
3. Establish communication with the supporting agency.
4. Request fires from supporting agency.
5. Adjust fires as needed.
6. Refine and record target location, as required.
7. End fire mission.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
4. MCWP 3-16.2 Procedures for the Marine Corps Fire Support
5. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
6. MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
7. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).
1812-CSS-2001: Monitor Unit Table of Organization and Equipment Modification (T/O&E) Procedures

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months  
**GRADES:** GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT  
**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT  
**CONDITION:** Given a using unit account and a T/O&E.  
**STANDARD:** To ensure the T/O&E allowances are properly maintained to support the mission.  
**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**  
1. Validate unit T/O&E excesses and deficiencies.  
2. Supervise the adjustment of the unit table of equipment.  

**REFERENCES:**  

1812-CSS-2002: Conduct Combat Service and Support

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months  
**BILLETS:** Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader  
**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT  
**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT  
**CONDITION:** Given an operations order.  
**STANDARD:** To support the tactical sustainment of the unit.  
**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**  
1. Plan for combat service and support operations.  
2. Coordinate for combat service and support operations.  
3. Execute combat service and support operations.  

**REFERENCES:**  
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon  
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment  
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations  
4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics  
5. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations  
6. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations

1812-CSS-2003: Perform the Duties of a Logistics Chief
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Tank Leader

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given logistical resources, and commander's guidance.

STANDARD: To support the mission requirements of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Manage Logistics Operations Center (LOC).
3. Establish Combat Service Support Site.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)
9. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

1812-TAC-2001: Conduct Quartering Party Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank unit and an operations order.

STANDARD: In order to establish site survey of intended AA, coordinate movement of unit into AA, and provide security prior to and during movement into AA.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with unit S-3 and S-4 for details on the location and requirements for the AA.
2. Task organize Quartering Party.
3. Issue Warning Order to Quartering Party personnel.
4. Conduct tactical road march from current location to planned site.
5. Establish security element and conduct patrol of area to determine level of enemy activity in the immediate area.
6. Conduct site survey.
7. Prepare AA to receive unit.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
2. MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
3. MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: 1. Quartering party should include security detail appropriate to size of AA and enemy activity and representatives from each major element and staff section. 2. Coordinate with unit S-3 and S-4 for details on the location and requirements for the AA, personnel and equipment for the quartering party, fire support coordination to cover the movement to and survey of the site. 3. During site survey, Plt Sgt/Tank Leader should identify the ability of Quartering Party and main unit to defend area, trafficability of routes in area, ability of main unit to fit into area with proper dispersion between units and facilities, and proposed locations of elements and facilities within the area.

1812-TAC-2003: Advice Supported Unit Commander on Tank Employment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Tank Commander, Tank Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operations order.

STANDARD: To provide effective tank support of supported unit's commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for operations in jungles, heavy forests, deserts, urban terrain, mountains, CBRN environment, and cold weather.
2. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the unit for stability and support operations.
3. Advise on the conduct of fording operations.
4. Advise on CSS requirements for operations.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
3. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
5. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
8. MCWP 3-35.1 Cold Weather Operations
9. MCWP 3-35.2 Mountain Operations
10. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
11. MCWP 3-35.5 Jungle Operations
12. MCWP 3-35.6 Desert Operations

**1812-EXPD-2001:** Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations Using Automated Information Systems (AIS)

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Battalion Logistics Chief, Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an operations plan to support MPF operations, commander's guidance.

**STANDARD:** To ensure proper identification of logistical support.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Develop a unit MPF plan.
2. Direct unit marshalling and movement operations.
3. Direct assembly operations.
4. Establish a unit regeneration plan.

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. NWP 22-10 MPF Operations

**1812-EXPD-2002:** Plan Transportation Support for a Unit Operation

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Battalion Logistics Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

**GRADES:** SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given an operations order.

**STANDARD:** To ensure sufficient transportation assets are available to support unit deployment.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Develop unit embarkation plan.
2. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution (FDP&E).
3. Manage Unit Embarkation plan.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. JP 3-02 Amphibious Operations
3. JP 3-02.2 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 4500.9 Defense Transportation Regulations
5. MCO 4630.6 Military Airlift Command Requirement
6. MCO P4450.12 Storage and Handling of Hazardous Materials
7. MCO P5090.2A Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual (Jul 98)
8. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)

1812-RNGE-2001: Develop surface danger zones (SDZs)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a requirement to conduct a live fire training event.

STANDARD: To ensure all expended ordnance falls within a previously designated and safe area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Construct a small arms and machinegun SDZ.
2. Construct a hand grenade and rifle grenade SDZ.
3. Construct a rocket/missile SDZ.
4. Construct a mortar SDZ.
5. Construct a tank gunnery SDZ.
6. Construct an aerial gunnery SDZ.
7. Construct a combined arms live fire exercise SDZ.

REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. MCO 3570.1C Range Safety

1812-RNGE-2002: Design ranges in support of expeditionary operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Master Gunner
GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the requirement to conduct training in an expeditionary environment in the absence of preplanned ranges.

STANDARD: To accomplish safe and effective standards based training.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Coordinate with host nation.
2. Coordinate with higher headquarters.
3. Coordinate with DASC.
4. Develop range regulations.
5. Construct ranges.
6. Establish communication requirements in support of range operations.
7. Determine resource requirements in support of range operations.

REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions
3. JP 3-09.3 Close Air Support
4. MCO 1553.3A Unit Training Management (UTM)
5. MCO 3570.1C Range Safety
6. MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery
7. MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
8. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

1812-TRNG-2001: Teach employment of individual weapons

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit preparing to conduct gunnery.

STANDARD: To ensure the unit is able to safely and effectively employ assigned weapons systems.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Teach the geometry of fires of individual weapons in support of maneuver.
2. Teach methods of fire and control.
3. Teach limitations/capabilities of individual weapons.
4. Teach methods of engagement (unit/individual) with individual weapons.
5. Teach considerations in the employment of grenades and pyrotechnics.
REFERENCES:
1. FM 23-30 Grenade
2. MCO 3574.2k Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TM 02498A-10/2 Operator's Manual, Machine Guns, Caliber .50; Browning, M2 Heavy Barrel
5. TM 05538C-10/1A Operator's Manual, Rifle, 5.56mm, M16A2 w/Equipment
6. TM 08521A/09761a-23&p/2a Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
7. TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
8. TM 08671A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 5.56mm, M249
9. TM 09134A-12&P/1 AT-4 tracer trainer
10. TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
12. TM 9-1315-886-12 Launcher and Cartridge 84MM, M136 (AT-4)
13. TM 9-1340-214-10 LAAW/LAAW trainer (practice)
15. TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1812-TRNG-2002: Facilitate simulation training program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Master Gunner

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters intent, assessment of the unit, and unit training plan.

STANDARD: To achieve set standards through simulation prior to the use of actual vehicles, weapons, and ammunition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training hardware.
2. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training software.
3. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training scenarios.
4. Identify the limitation/capabilities of simulation training facilities.
REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS: Instructor Operator Certificate for Simulator

1812-TRNG-2003: Manage the unit gunnery training program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETs: Master Gunner

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given higher headquarters intent, assessment of the unit, and unit training plan.

STANDARD: To ensure all Marines are trained to standard on the given weapons system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify requirements for the short range training plan.
2. Identify requirements for the long range training plan.
3. Develop the short range training plan.
4. Develop the long range training plan.
5. Supervise implementation of the unit gunnery training program.
6. Determine the units gunnery proficiency and formulate corrective action.
7. Supervise all testing on all GST task specific to their weapon platform.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
3. MCO 3570.1C Range Safety
4. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
5. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
6. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
7. ST 3-20.21-2 Vehicle Crew Evaluator Exportable Packet
8. TC 25-8 Training Ranges
9. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
10. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
**1812-TRNG-2004:** Manage ammunition resources

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** Given ammunition allocation and unit training plan.

**STANDARD:** To ensure Marines are trained to standard within the units given allotment of ammunition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Identify unit requirements for the short range training plan.
2. Identify unit requirements for the long range training plan.
3. Allocate unit ammunition according to training plans.
4. Forecast unit ammunition for the fiscal year.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCO 3570.1C Range Safety
2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
4. NAVMC 8011 Class V Material Allowance for Training, Programmed Testing, and Security
5. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

---

**1812-OPS-2001:** Perform duties as a special staff member to the battalion commander

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**BILLETS:** Master Gunner

**GRADES:** GYSGT, MSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** MOJT

**CONDITION:** While Serving as a member of the battalion staff.

**STANDARD:** To provide timely and accurate support to the battalions mission and scheme of maneuver.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Provide analysis to the battalion commander on unit capabilities.
2. Provide subject matter expertise input into the Marine Corps planning process.
3. Conduct weapons safety certifications requirements for unit OIC/RSO.
4. Assess unit training and operational capability.
REFERENCES:
1. DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety
2. MCO 1553.3A Unit Training Management (UTM)
3. MCO 3570.1C Range Safety
4. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
5. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
6. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

1812-REC-2001: Plan Reconnaissance Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETs: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Tank Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYS GT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operations order from higher and references.

STANDARD: In order to accurately answer requests for information, commanders critical information requirements, and gain information that will yield intelligence in support of other operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine requirements for a zone reconnaissance.
2. Determine requirements for an area reconnaissance.
3. Determine requirements for a route reconnaissance.
4. Determine requirements for security operations.
5. Determine requirements for a screen.
6. Determine requirements for reconnaissance in force.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

1812-OTH-2001: Qualify using the M9 Service Pistol

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYS GT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M9 service pistol, cleaning gear, and lubricants.
STANDARD: To meet standard set in MCO 3574.2.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Maintain the M9 Service Pistol.
2. Engage targets with the M9 Service Pistol.

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-01B Pistol Marksmanship
2. NAVMC 10425.REV 1-95 Pistol Scorecard
3. TM 1005A-10/1 PISTOL SEMIAUTOMATIC 9mm, M9, OPERATOR'S MANUAL

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A363 Cartridge, 9mm Ball M882</td>
<td>120 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17570 Pistol Known Distance (KD) Range

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This individual training standard is incorporated in the Marine Corps Common Skills Volume II Cpl-Capt (NAVMC 3500.19) as pertaining to the grades of SSgt-Capt.

8007. 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

1812-CMDC-1001: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank and associated SL-3.

STANDARD: To maneuver a tank using non-verbal communication.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Communicate using hand and arm signals to control vehicles.
2. Communicate using flashlights to control vehicles.
3. Communicate using flags to control vehicles.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals

1812-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test
**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank, all associated training devices and references.

**STANDARD:** To pass all tests in accordance with TC 3-20.1-01.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles and Theater Threat Vehicles.
2. Identify Ammunition.
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headsapce and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M48 caliber .50 with M10 Charger.
5. Perform MRS update.
6. Reload Main Gun.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**1812-GNRY-1002:** Perform individual actions as assigned crew member for Gun Table I

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a Tank, all associated equipment, and references.

**STANDARD:** To complete all 8 performance tasks in accordance with TC 3-20.1-01 prior to conducting live fire.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Perform crew fire evacuation drill.
2. Perform crew Roll-Over Drill.
3. Send "call for" reports.
4. Send a SPOTREP, if applicable.
5. Evacuate an injured crewman.
6. Remove/install M256 breech block.
8. Perform misfire procedures for the 120mm main gun.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

1812-GNRY-1003: Perform individual actions to unload Stuck Main Gun Round

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To return Main Gun back to operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify stuck round.
2. Remove stuck round.

REFERENCES:

1812-GNRY-1004: Unload Stuck Case Base from Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Loader
**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To return Main Gun to fully operational condition.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Identify stuck case base.
2. Remove stuck case base.

**REFERENCES:**

---

**1812-GNRY-1005:** Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun From Loader's Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Loader

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** Until the targets are suppressed, destroyed, or the order "Cease Fire" is given.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Prepare loaders station.
2. Operate loaders machine gun.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

8-35  
Enclosure (1)
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace 100 rounds per Marine

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

----

1812-GNRY-1006: Perform individual actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So that center of impact of the last round fired is within .25 mils of the aiming point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Fire for Zero with KE.
4. Fire for confirmation with KE.
5. Record data.
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for CE.
7. Align GAS.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>4 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

----

1812-VOPS-1001: Troubleshoot Tank
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank with a malfunction, and references.

STANDARD: To isolate and identify any malfunctions, correct if authorized, and report to organizational maintenance as necessary.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Determine the symptom or malfunction.
2. Locate symptom or malfunction.
3. Conduct troubleshooting procedures.

REFERENCES:

1812-VOPS-1002: Perform individual actions to recover Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled tank requiring recovery.

STANDARD: To return the tank to the unit maintenance collection point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare disabled vehicle for recovery.
2. Prepare recovery vehicle.
3. Attach tow cables or tow bar.
4. Use additional vehicles if required.
5. Tow disabled tank.

REFERENCES:
1. ATV 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
3. TM 08953A-10/1-2 Operator's Manual, Volume 2 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-
1812-VOPS-1003: Perform individual actions on a Tank

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSgt, GYSgt

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an emergency procedure.

STANDARD: To prevent injury to personnel or further damage to equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Service air cleaner after CBRN attack.
2. Perform immediate action for loss of engine power.
3. Perform immediate action for loss of steering.
4. Perform immediate action for loss of service brakes.
5. Unlock stuck parking brake.
6. Open Breech block.
7. Close Breech block.
8. Perform immediate action for engine failure to shut down.
9. Perform immediate action for starter failure to disengage.
11. Perform immediate action for vehicle master power failure to power down.
12. Decontaminate tank.
13. Verify operational readiness of fire control system following a nuclear explosion.
15. Perform Armor damage immediate action.
16. Use battle over ride.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon

1812-VOPS-1004: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months
BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank, SL-3 and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the operational readiness of the Tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify the required PMCS interval.
2. Conduct PMCS.
3. Submit discrepancies on DA-2404 to Unit Maintenance.

REFERENCES:
1. DA-2404 Form DA-2404
2. LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

1812-VOPS-1005: Prepare, Operate, and Secure assigned station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Tank.

STANDARD: To ensure operation of the Tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare assigned station.
2. Operate assigned station.

REFERENCES:
1812-VOPS-1006: Conduct Maintenance on Auxiliary Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Tank.

STANDARD: To ensure operation of the tank.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Maintain Deep Water Fording Kit.
3. Maintain AN/PSN-13 DAGR.
4. Maintain Semi Automatic Rifle, M4 5.56mm.
5. Antenna, AS-1729/VRC.
6. Antenna, AS-2731/GRC.
7. Auxiliary Power Unit, external.
8. Control, Frequency Selector, CD-82/VRC.

REFERENCES:
4. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
5. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
7. TM 11-5825-283-10 Operator's Manual for Manpack Radio Sets AN/ASQ-177C(V)4; AN/PSQ-6C; AN/VSQ-2C(V)1; AN/VSQ-2C(V)2; AN/VSQ-2C(V)4
8. TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)
10. TM 11-5985-262-14 Antenna AS 1729/VRC
13. TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank

1812-TAC-1001:  Employ Terrain Driving Techniques

EVALUATION-CODED:  NO          SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

BILLETS:  Driver

GRADES:  PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:  FORMAL

CONDITION:  Given a tank and an area suitable for mechanized operations.

STANDARD:  To utilize terrain to minimize vehicle signatures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare drivers station.
2. Operate drivers station.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:  Facility Code 17907 Tracked Vehicle Drivers Course

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:  Tracked vehicle driving range will require a (2) part range. The first will be on a hardball road, and the second will take place on a dedicated off-road driving range. Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:  Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.
TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNER EVENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS</td>
<td>9000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>9001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>9002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>9003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>9004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>9005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE GUNNERY EVENT

## 9000. INDEX OF INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EVENT CODE</th>
<th>EVAL CODE</th>
<th>EVENT</th>
<th>PAGES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gunnery Skills Test</td>
<td>9-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform individual actions as assigned crew member for Gun Table I</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform individual actions to unload Stuck Main Gun Round</td>
<td>9-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unload Stuck Stub Case from Main Gun</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun From Loader's Station</td>
<td>9-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform individual action to Zero 120mm Main Gun</td>
<td>9-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform the engagement process</td>
<td>9-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Gunnery Skills Test</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform individual actions as tank commander for Table I</td>
<td>9-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform the engagement process</td>
<td>9-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform individual actions to unload Stuck Main Gun Round</td>
<td>9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform individual action to Zero 120mm Main Gun</td>
<td>9-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero Coaxial Zero M240 7.62mm Machine Gun</td>
<td>9-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun</td>
<td>9-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1008</td>
<td></td>
<td>Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station</td>
<td>9-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1009</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform individual actions to conduct Armament Accuracy Checks</td>
<td>9-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun</td>
<td>9-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun</td>
<td>9-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System</td>
<td>9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Perform individual actions to conduct Armament Accuracy Checks</td>
<td>9-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify Error Sources</td>
<td>9-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-2006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Employ the Engagement Process</td>
<td>9-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks</td>
<td>9-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero Tank Main gun</td>
<td>9-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero M48 .50 caliber machine gun</td>
<td>9-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zero Coaxial Machine Gun</td>
<td>9-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANK-GNRY-3005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Table I</td>
<td>9-21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9001. 1000-LEVEL EVENTS

1812-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETs: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank, all associated training devices and references.

STANDARD: To pass all tests in accordance with TC 3-20.1-01.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles and Theater Threat Vehicles.
2. Identify Ammunition.
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, and perform immediate action, on M48 caliber .50 with M10 Charger.
5. Perform MRS update.
6. Reload Main Gun.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
1812-GNRY-1002: Perform individual actions as assigned crew member for Gun Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Tank, all associated equipment, and references.

STANDARD: To complete all 8 performance tasks in accordance with TC 3-20.1-01 prior to conducting live fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Perform crew fire evacuation drill.
2. Perform crew Roll-Over Drill.
3. Send "call for" reports.
4. Send a SPOTREP, if applicable.
5. Evacuate an injured crewman.
6. Remove/install M256 breech block.
8. Perform misfire procedures for the 120mm main gun.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

1812-GNRY-1003: Perform individual actions to unload Stuck Main Gun Round

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To return Main Gun back to operational status.
PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify stuck round.
2. Remove stuck round.

REFERENCES:

1812-GNRY-1004: Unload Stuck Case Base from Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Loader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To return Main Gun to fully operational condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify stuck case base.
2. Remove stuck case base.

REFERENCES:

1812-GNRY-1005: Engage Targets with M240 Machine Gun From Loader's Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Loader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.
**STANDARD:** Until the targets are suppressed, destroyed, or the order "Cease Fire" is given.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Prepare loaders station.
2. Operate loaders machine gun.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>100 rounds per Marine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**1812-GNRY-1006:** Perform individual actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun.

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETs:** Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

**GRADES:** PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank and references.

**STANDARD:** So that center of impact of the last round fired is within .25 mils of the aiming point.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Fire for Zero with KE.
4. Fire for confirmation with KE.
5. Record data.
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for CE.
7. Align GAS.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
2. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams


SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC | Quantity
--- | ---
C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865 | 4 rounds per tank
CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002 | 4 rounds per tank

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

1812-GNRY-1007: Perform the engagement process

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1812

BILLETS: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To destroy or neutralize a threat.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-04 Detect Identify Decide Engage and Assess (DIDEA)
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1802-GNRY-1001: Conduct Gunnery Skills Test

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank and all associated training devices.

STANDARD: To pass all tests in accordance with TC 3-20.1-01.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Recognition of Threat Vehicles and Theater Threat Vehicles.
2. Identify Ammunition.
4. Clear, disassemble, assemble, set headspace and timing, perform function check, load, perform immediate action, on M48 caliber .50 Machine Gun with M10 Charger.
5. Perform MRS update.
6. Reload Main Gun.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

1802-GNRY-1002: Perform individual actions as tank commander for Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL
**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:**  FORMAL

**CONDITION:**  Given a Tank and all associated equipment.

**STANDARD:**  To complete all 8 performance tasks in accordance with TC 3-20.1-01 prior to conducting live fire.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills
2. Perform crew Roll Over Drills
3. Send "call for" reports.
4. Send a SPOTREP, if applicable.
5. Evacuate an injured crewman
6. Remove/install M256 breech block.
8. Perform misfire procedures for the 120mm main gun.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**EVALUATION-CODED:**  NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:**  6 months

**GRADES:**  2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:**  FORMAL

**CONDITION:**  Given a tank.

**STANDARD:**  To destroy or neutralize a threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-04 Detect Identify Decide Engage and Assess (D IDEA)
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
4. TM 08953A-10/1-1 Operator's Manual, Volume 1 of 3, Tank, Combat, Full-
Tracked: 120-MM Gun, M1A1 2350-01-087-1095 General Abrams

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

1802-GNRY-1004: Perform individual actions to unload Stuck Main Gun Round

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To return Main Gun back to operational status.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Identify stuck round.
2. Remove stuck round.

REFERENCES:

1802-GNRY-1005: Perform individual actions to Zero 120mm Main Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

MOS PERFORMING: 1802

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL
INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank and references.

STANDARD: So that center of impact of the last round fired is within .25 mils of the aiming point.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Align GPS.
4. Fire for confirmation with KE.
5. Record data.
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for CE.
7. Align GAS.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge</td>
<td>120mm TPCS-DS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31 Cartridge</td>
<td>120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>4 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

1802-GNRY-1006: Zero Coaxial Zero M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary tank and references.

STANDARD: So the reticle aiming point is centered in the strike area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the gunners station.
2. Operate gunners station.
REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:
DODIC   Quantity
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace 100 rounds per tank

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

1812-GNRY-2002: Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: So the reticle aiming points are centered in the strike area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Boresight the weapon.
3. Zero day mode.
4. Zero thermal mode.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:
DODIC   Quantity
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP 100 rounds per tank
**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

**1802-GNRY-1008:** Engage Targets with Coaxial Machine Gun from Commander's Station

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**GRADES:** 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a stationary tank with a three-man crew and targets.

**STANDARD:** Until the targets are suppressed or destroyed.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**
1. Prepare tank commanders station
2. Operate tank commanders station

**REFERENCES:**
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>200 rounds per Tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

**1802-GNRY-1009:** Perform individual actions to conduct Armament Accuracy Checks
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To ensure the fire control system is operational.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Record data.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

9002. 2000-LEVEL EVENTS

1812-GNRY-2001: Zero Coaxial M240 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Gunner, Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank and references.

STANDARD: So the reticle aiming point is centered in the strike area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Prepare the gunners' station.
2. Operate gunners' station.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>100 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**1812-GNRY-2002:** Zero M48 .50 Caliber Machine Gun

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**BILLETS:** Tank Commander

**GRADES:** CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING:** FORMAL

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So the reticle aiming points are centered in the strike area.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS:**

1. Complete PMCS.
2. Boresight the weapon.
3. Zero day mode.
4. Zero thermal mode.

**REFERENCES:**

1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>100 rounds per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex
1812-GNRY-2003: Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETs: Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: In order to provide obscuration for the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Inspect grenade discharger
2. Load smoke grenades
3. Power up commander's station
4. Operate M250/M257 grenade launcher system

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr</td>
<td>16 grenades per tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

1812-GNRY-2004: Perform individual actions to conduct Armament Accuracy Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

BILLETs: Driver, Gunner, Loader, Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.
STANDARD: To ensure the fire control system is operational.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Record data.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: AAC solution board.

1812-GNRY-2005: Identify Error Sources

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETs: Tank Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: In order to ensure accuracy of main gun.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:
1. Conduct calibration policy.
2. Identify fixed biases.
3. Identify variable biases.
4. Identify random errors.

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
**1812-GNRY-2007**: Employ the Engagement Process

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

**BILLETS**: Tank Commander

**GRADES**: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

**INITIAL TRAINING SETTING**: FORMAL

**CONDITION**: Given a tank.

**STANDARD**: To destroy or neutralize the threat.

**PERFORMANCE STEPS**:
1. Detect a threat.
2. Identify a threat.
3. Decide on a course of action.
4. Execute engagement.
5. Assess target effects.

**REFERENCES**:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-04 Detect Identify Decide Engage and Assess (DIDEA)
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**: Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS**:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS**: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

---

**9003. 3000-LEVEL GUNNERY EVENTS**

**TANK-GNRY-3001**: Conduct Armament Accuracy Checks

**SUPPORTED MET(S)**:  
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 1 month
CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To ensure the fire control system is operational.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Initiate AACs.
3. Record data.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1009  1812-GNRY-2004

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

TANK-GNRY-3002: Zero Tank Main gun

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: So that the center of impact of the last round fired is within .25 mils of the aiming point.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Boresight the tank.
2. Fire for Zero with KE.
3. Align GPS.
4. Fire for confirmation with KE.
5. Record data.
6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for CE.
7. Align GAS.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1005  1812-GNRY-1006

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>8 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>4 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>4 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

TANK-GNRY-3003: Zero M48 .50 caliber machine gun

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: So that the aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Complete PMCS.
2. Boresight the weapon.
3. Zero day mode.
4. Zero thermal mode.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1007  1812-GNRY-2002

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**TANK-GNRY-3004**: Zero Coaxial Machine Gun

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**  
MCT 1.1.2  
MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** So that the aiming point is centered on the beaten zone.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**  
1. Lase to a target or manually input 500 meter range.  
2. Fire burst.  
3. Align GPS.  
4. Fire for confirmation.  
5. Record data.

**CHAINED EVENTS:**  
1802-GNRY-1006  
1812-GNRY-2001

**REFERENCES:**  
1. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire  

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**  

**ORDNANCE:**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**  
Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range  
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**TANK-GNRY-3005**: Conduct Table I.

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**  
MCT 1.1.2  
MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.
STANDARD: To demonstrate technical proficiencies as a tank crew.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Perform crew fire and evacuation drills.
2. Perform crew Roll-Over Drills.
3. Send "call for" reports.
4. Send a SPOTREP, if applicable.
5. Evacuate an injured crewman.
6. Remove/install M256 breech block.
8. Perform misfire procedures for the 120mm main gun.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1002 1802-VOPS-1004 1802-VOPS-1006
1812-GNRY-1001 1812-GNRY-1002 1812-VOPS-1003
1812-VOPS-1005 1812-VOPS-2003

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

TANK-GNRY-3006: Conduct Table II

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table II is designed to train and evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle in a simulated environment.

CONDITION: Given a gunnery training simulator.
STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target from a tank.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary and moving targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target with a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets with the tank mounted machine guns.

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1002 1802-GNRY-1003 1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005 1802-GNRY-1006 1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008 1802-VOPS-1002 1802-VOPS-1006
1812-GNRY-1003 1812-GNRY-1004 1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006 1812-GNRY-1007 1812-GNRY-2001
1812-VOPS-1005

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
4. TM 08953A-10/1 Advanced Gunnery Training System
5. TM 08953A-10/2 Advanced Gunnery Training System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>550 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>15 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is determined by the MSC.

**TANK-GNRY-3007:** Conduct Table III

**SUPPORTED MET(s):**
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 6 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Table III is designed to evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary and moving vehicle.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank.

**STANDARD:** To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring 70 points per target on each engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing SCWS.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the tank mounted machine guns.
PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3005 TANK-GNRY-3006

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1003 1802-GNRY-1004 1802-GNRY-1005
1802-GNRY-1006 1802-GNRY-1007 1802-GNRY-1008
1802-VOPS-1002 1812-GNRY-1003 1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005 1812-GNRY-1006 1812-GNRY-1007
1812-VOPS-1005

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>450 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>16 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This table must be qualified dry fire prior to any live fire. Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

TANK-GNRY-3008: Conduct Table IV

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table IV is designed to evaluate the crews ability to engage stationary and moving targets placed in a tactical array from a stationary or moving vehicle.
CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of the 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing SCWS.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage stationary target utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the tank mounted machine guns.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3005  TANK-GNRY-3006  TANK-GNRY-3007

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1003  1802-GNRY-1004  1802-GNRY-1005
1802-GNRY-1006  1802-GNRY-1007  1802-GNRY-1008
1802-GNRY-1009  1802-VOPS-1002  1812-GNRY-1003
1812-GNRY-1004  1812-GNRY-1005  1812-GNRY-1006
1812-GNRY-1007  1812-GNRY-2001  1812-GNRY-1002

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>450 rounds per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>100 rounds per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>6 rounds per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>3 rounds per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028</td>
<td>1 round per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

TANK-GNRY-3009: Conduct Table V

SUPPORTED MET(S):

- MCT 1.1.2
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table V is designed to train the crew to engage moving and stationary targets utilizing all vehicle weapon systems.

CONDITION: Given a tank.

STANDARD: To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 possible points and qualify 7 of 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per target on each engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and moving target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and a moving target utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary and a moving target utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets with the Stabilized Commanders Weapon Station, coaxial machine gun, and loaders machine gun.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TANK-GNRY-3005</th>
<th>TANK-GNRY-3006</th>
<th>TANK-GNRY-3007</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**CHAINED EVENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1802-GNRY-1003</th>
<th>1802-GNRY-1004</th>
<th>1802-GNRY-1005</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1802-GNRY-1006</td>
<td>1802-GNRY-1007</td>
<td>1802-GNRY-1008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1802-VOPS-1002</td>
<td>1812-GNRY-1003</td>
<td>1812-GNRY-1004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812-GNRY-1005</td>
<td>1812-GNRY-1006</td>
<td>1812-GNRY-1007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REFERENCES:**

1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>550 rounds per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>50 rounds per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>8 rounds per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>5 rounds per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028</td>
<td>1 round per crew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training
devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

---

**TANK-GNRY-3010**: Conduct Table VI

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: YES  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

**DESCRIPTION**: Table VI is designed to evaluate the crew on engaging moving and stationary targets using all vehicle weapon systems while in the offensive or defensive postures.

**CONDITION**: Given a tank.

**STANDARD**: To obtain a minimum of 700 of the 1000 total points and qualify 7 of 10 engagements by scoring a minimum of 70 points per engagement.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Task #0: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
2. Task #1: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
3. Task #2: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the coaxial machine gun.
4. Task #3: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a moving and stationary target utilizing the main gun.
5. Task #4: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun.
6. Task #5: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary and moving targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
7. Task #6: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun and coaxial machine gun.
8. Task #7: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the main gun from a simulated degraded fire control system.
9. Task #8: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage a stationary target utilizing the loaders machine gun or from a simulated degraded fire control system.
10. Task #9: In a daylight or limited visibility environment, engage multiple stationary targets utilizing the commanders weapon station, coaxial machine gun, or loaders machine gun.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS**:
TANK-GNRY-3005  TANK-GNRY-3006  TANK-GNRY-3007
TANK-GNRY-3008  TANK-GNRY-3009
CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-GNRY-1003 1802-GNRY-1004 1802-GNRY-1005
1802-GNRY-1006 1802-GNRY-1007 1802-GNRY-1008
1802-VOPS-1002 1812-GNRY-1003 1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005 1812-GNRY-1006 1812-GNRY-1007

REFERENCES:
1. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
2. TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
3. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>450 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>50 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>8 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>9 rounds per crew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms.

MISCELLANEOUS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).

9004. 4000-LEVEL EVENTS

TANK-GNRY-4001: Conduct Table VII

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table VII is designed to train and evaluate the sections
ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank section.

STANDARD: To pass all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-TSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS: TANK-GNRY-3010

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001 1802-GNRY-1003 1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005 1802-GNRY-1006 1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008 1802-TAC-1001 1802-VOPS-1002
1812-CBTS-2003 1812-GNRY-1003 1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005 1812-GNRY-1006 1812-GNRY-1007
1812-VOPS-1005

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked</td>
<td>200 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A598 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Li</td>
<td>100 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multi-purpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 12 months.

TANK-GNRY-4002: Conduct Table VIII
SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2        MCT 1.6.1        MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO         SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table VIII is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank section.

STANDARD: To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commanders METT-TSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3010      TANK-GNRY-4001

CHAINED EVENTS:
1802-CBTS-1001     1802-GNRY-1003     1802-GNRY-1005
1802-GNRY-1006     1802-GNRY-1007     1802-GNRY-1008
1802-TAC-1001      1802-VOPS-1002     1812-CBTS-2003
1812-GNRY-1003     1812-GNRY-1004     1812-GNRY-1005
1812-GNRY-1006     1812-GNRY-1007     1812-GNRY-2001
1812-TRNG-2004     1812-VOPS-1005

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>700 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>400 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA38</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>16 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a
prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

**TANK-GNRY-4003:** Conduct Table IX

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Table IX is designed to train and evaluate the section's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank section.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commanders METT-TSL.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct offensive operations as a section.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a section.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**
TANK-GNRY-3010  TANK-GNRY-4001  TANK-GNRY-4002

**CHAINED EVENTS:**
1802-CBTS-1001  1802-GNRY-1003  1802-GNRY-1004
1802-GNRY-1005  1802-GNRY-1006  1802-GNRY-1007
1802-GNRY-1008  1802-TAC-1001  1812-CBTS-2003
1812-CMDC-2001  1812-GNRY-1003  1812-GNRY-1004
1812-GNRY-1005  1812-GNRY-1006  1812-GNRY-1007
1812-VOPS-1005

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>700 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>400 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>14 rounds per section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38- Cartridge, 120mm Canister XM1 028</td>
<td>1 round per section</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

9005. 5000-LEVEL EVENTS

TANK-GNRY-5001: Conduct Table X

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table X is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank platoon.

STANDARD: To pass all tactical scenarios presented as determined by the commander's METT-TSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3010 TANK-GNRY-4003

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORDNANCE</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked</td>
<td>400 rounds per Platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A598 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Blank M1A1 Li</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multi-purpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training
devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically
supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a
prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-
fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve
Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000-level Gunnery
tasks.

TANK-GNRY-5002: Conduct Table XI

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.1.2 MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table XI is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's
ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

CONDITION: Given a tank platoon.

STANDARD: To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined
by the commander's METT-TCSL.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:
TANK-GNRY-3010 TANK-GNRY-4003 TANK-GNRY-5001

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>1400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>800 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA38 Cartridge, Caliber .50 SLAP-T M762</td>
<td>32 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS:**

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.

---

**TANK-GNRY-5003:** Conduct Table XII

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.1.2  MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** YES

**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**DESCRIPTION:** Table XII is designed to train and evaluate the platoon's ability to execute collective tasks in a tactical live fire environment.

**CONDITION:** Given a tank platoon.

**STANDARD:** To achieve minimum of 50 percent target destruction as determined by the commander's METT-TSL.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct offensive operations as a platoon.
2. Conduct defensive operations as a platoon.

**PREREQUISITE EVENTS:**
TANK-GNRY-3010  TANK-GNRY-4003  TANK-GNRY-5001
TANK-GNRY-5002

**REFERENCES:**
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
4. TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORDNANCE</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace</td>
<td>1400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>800 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785 Cartridge, 120mm TPCS-SDS-T M865</td>
<td>20 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31- Cartridge, 120mm TP-T XM1002</td>
<td>8 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle
Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII). Sustainment interval for Reserve Component is 24 months, alternating years between 4000 and 5000 level Gunnery tasks.
TANK T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 10
COLLECTIVE TRAINING TOW AND SCOUT PLATOONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAGRAPH</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PURPOSE</td>
<td>10000 10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT CODING</td>
<td>10001 10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES</td>
<td>10002 10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS FOR TOW PLATOON.</td>
<td>10003 10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOW 5000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>10004 10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS FOR SCOUT PLATOON.</td>
<td>10005 10-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCOUT 5000-LEVEL EVENTS</td>
<td>10006 10-18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon level TOW and Scout unit events (5000-Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to the platoon and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Additionally, unit training managers should reference NAVMC 3500.44_ (Infantry T&R Manual) in order to identify all individual events specific to the infantry occupational specialty as referenced in this Manual.

10001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with an up to 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with “SCT” or “TOW” indicating that the event is for the Scout or TOW unit organic to the Tank Battalion in the Infantry Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the platoon level are:

C2 - Command and Control
FFRO - Force Protection
FPST - Fire Support
INT - Intelligence
MANV - Maneuver
REC - Recon Operations

C. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

10002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

10003. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS FOR TOWS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Code</th>
<th>Eval-Coded</th>
<th>Event Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TOW-C2-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures</td>
<td>10-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOW-INT-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupy an observation post</td>
<td>10-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 10004. TOW 5000-LEVEL EVENTS

**TOW-C2-5001**: Conduct Troop Leading Procedures

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.12.1
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD**: To plan and prepare for operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Begin the planning and assess METT-TCSL.
2. Arrange for reconnaissance via map, imagery, UAS or recon patrol.
3. Make reconnaissance and confirm SALUTE, KOCOA, routes and positions.
4. Complete the plan and develop operations order.
5. Issue orders.
6. Supervise by conducting brief backs, PCC/PCIs and rehearsals.

**REFERENCES**:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
3. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
7. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

---

| TOW-INT-5002 | Conduct IPB | 10-4 |
| TOW-FPRO-5001 | Conduct CBRN Operations | 10-5 |
| TOW-MANV-5001 | React to Indirect Fire | 10-5 |
| TOW-MANV-5002 | React to Air Attack | 10-6 |
| TOW-MANV-5003 | Conduct Resupply Operations | 10-6 |
| TOW-MANV-5004 | Conduct Convoy Security | 10-7 |
| TOW-MANV-5005 | Occupy an Assembly Area | 10-7 |
| TOW-MANV-5006 | Conduct Tactical Movement | 10-8 |
| TOW-MANV-5007 | Conduct an Attack by Fire | 10-9 |
| TOW-MANV-5008 | Conduct an Anti-Armor Ambush | 10-10 |
| TOW-MANV-5009 | Conduct an Support by Fire | 10-10 |
| TOW-MANV-5010 | Conduct an Assault | 10-11 |
| TOW-MANV-5011 | Conduct Operations in an Urban Area | 10-12 |
| TOW-MANV-5012 | Defend a Battle Position | 10-13 |
| TOW-MANV-5013 | Conduct a Linkup | 10-14 |
| TOW-MANV-5014 | Conduct a Relief in Place | 10-14 |
| TOW-MANV-5015 | Conduct a Passage of Lines | 10-15 |
| TOW-MANV-5016 | Conduct a Withdrawal | 10-16 |
| **TOW-MANV-5018** | YES | **Conduct security operations** | 10-16 |
| TOW-PSPT-5001 | Employ Fire Support Assets | 10-17 |
TOW-INT-5001: Occupy an observation post

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To observe and report all activity to higher.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Move by cover and concealed route to the vicinity of observation post.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of tentative observation post.
3. Occupy observation post.
4. Establish security.
5. Establish communications.
6. Report activity to higher.
7. Move observation post as required.
8. Execute evacuation plan as required.
9. Execute relief actions or de-establish observation post.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader’s Guide
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

TOW-INT-5002: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To analyze the threat and environment in a specific geographic area.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Employ UAS/reconnaissance assets.
2. Describe the battlefield effects.
3. Evaluate the threat.
4. Determine threat courses of action.
5. Define the battlefield environment.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
TOW-FPRO-5001: Conduct CBRN Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct monitor, survey, and decontamination operations.
6. Conduct operations in contaminated environments.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-37.2A Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear contamination avoidance

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

---

TOW-MANV-5001: React to Indirect Fire

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy indirect fires on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy indirect fires.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct action drill if moving to avoid impact area.
4. Send report to higher headquarters.
5. Continue mission.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulation platforms

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

---

**TOW-MANV-5002:** React to an Air Attack

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To mitigate the effects of enemy air attacks on friendly forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**

1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy aircraft.
2. Issue orders, conduct action drill.
3. If not observed by enemy aircraft, vehicles seek cover and concealment with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
4. Engage aircraft with heavy volume of fires in the path of flight.
5. Send report to higher headquarters.

**REFERENCES:**

1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. CWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

---

**TOW-MANV-5003:** Conduct Resupply Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To replenish all classes of supplies in order to maintain combat power.
EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Submit logistics reports to higher headquarters.
2. Coordinate with company trains to conduct resupply.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Conduct resupply.
5. Process all EPWs and casualties.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
8. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations

TOW-MANV-5004: Conduct Convoy Security Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 \(\Rightarrow\) MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO \(\Rightarrow\) SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To provide close in protection of a convoy while on the move.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning from METT-TCSL assessment and convoy operations order
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct movement along assigned route.
4. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
5. Conduct short halts as required.
6. Conduct immediate action drills as required.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
6. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
7. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

TOW-MANV-5005: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 \(\Rightarrow\) MCT 1.6.4
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Establish screen line for Quartering Party and follow on forces.
2. Be prepared to provide an element for local security for the Quartering Party.
3. Once the Assembly Area is occupied and conditions are set, collapse screen line.
4. Occupy Assembly Area.
5. Conduct Relief in Place as necessary.
6. Set in battle positions.
7. Establish observation post.
8. Establish communication with higher and adjacent units.
10. Complete Platoon fire plan sketch.

RELATED EVENT: TANK-MANV-5001

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

TOW-MANV-5006: Conduct a Tactical Road March

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To move along a designated route and arrange forces according to enemy situation and terrain.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Determine formation, movement technique, speed and dispersion.
2. Determine order of march.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct movement along assigned route.
5. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
6. Conduct short halts as required.
7. Conduct battle drills as required.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
RELATED EVENTS: TANK-MANV-5005

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

TOW-MANV-5007: Conduct an Attack by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To destroy enemy forces using long range fires from dominant terrain using the standoff of the Saber missile system.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct tactical movement to dominant terrain that allows weapons standoff.
5. Assume turret defilade firing position.
6. Assign target reference points, sectors of fire and fighting positions.
7. Issue platoon fire command specifying method of fire, firing pattern and rate of fire to engage enemy forces.
8. Send report to higher headquarters.
9. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORDNANCE</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DODIC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4500 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>1000 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>192 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task can be trained to standard using simulation.

---

**TOW-MANV-5008:** Conduct an Anti-Armor Ambush

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To destroy enemy forces using long range fires from dominant terrain using the standoff of the Saber missile system.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct BACMIS.
2. Cross LD.
3. Establish ORP.
4. Conduct leader's recon of ambush site.
5. Post security at ambush site.
6. Load security element into ambush site.
7. Load support element into ambush site.
8. Load assault element into ambush site.
9. Initiate ambush.
10. Search kill zone.
11. Remove assault element from ambush site to ORP.
12. Remove support element from ambush site to ORP.
13. Remove security element from ambush site to ORP.
14. Employ fire support plan to isolate objective and mask departure.
15. Return to friendly lines.

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>4500 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>1000 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M81 AP</td>
<td>400 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>192 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO5</td>
<td>Guided Missile, BTM-71D-3B (TOW-1 Pr</td>
<td>26 missiles per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**TOW-MANV-5009:** Conduct a Support by Fire

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1
CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To support the movement of friendly forces by suppressing enemy forces using long range fires.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct tactical movement to dominant terrain that allows weapons standoff.
5. Assume firing position.
6. Assign target reference points, sectors of fire and fighting positions.
7. Issue platoon fire command specifying method of fire, firing pattern and rate of fire to engage enemy forces.
8. Lift and shift direct and indirect fires as required to prevent fratricide.
9. Maintain communications with the moving force.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

RELATED EVENT: Tank-Manv-6003

REFERENCES:
1. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
2. FM 71-1 Tank and Mechanized Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip</td>
<td>2500 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064 Cartridge, 5.56mm 4 Ball M855/1 Trac</td>
<td>600 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod</td>
<td>96 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L314 Signal, Illum green star cluster</td>
<td>3 per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Signal, Illum white star cluster</td>
<td>3 per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TOW-MANV-5010: Conduct an Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): MCT 1.6.1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To defeat, destroy or neutralize enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into an assault force and a support force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Move to attack position.
5. Move to assault position.
6. Support force establishes a support by fire position.
7. Assault force conducts actions on the objective.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.
9. Gain foothold.
10. Secure/seize objective.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>200 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod 96</td>
<td>96 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L314 Signal, Illum green star cluster</td>
<td>3 per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Signal, Illum white star cluster</td>
<td>3 per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G955 Grenade, hand smoke vio</td>
<td>2 per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Close Combat Tactical Trainer (CCTT) and the AGTS can be used to train this task.

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** This task can be trained to standard using simulation.

**TOW-MANV-5011:** Conduct operations in an urban environment

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To defeat, destroy or neutralize enemy forces.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct IPB.
2. Conduct recon.
3. Maintain communications with high and adjacent units.
4. Develop range card.
5. Develop Orders.
7. Establish local security.
8. Isolate objective.
9. Secure objective.
10. Report to higher.

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Facility Code 17963 MOUT Collective Training Facility (small)

**ORDNANCE:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A080 Ctg, 5.56mm blank</td>
<td>6800 per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A075 Ctg, 5.56 blank linked</td>
<td>1200 per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A598 Ctg, .50 blank M1A1 linked</td>
<td>1000 per platoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REFERENCES:**
1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/ Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad
3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
4. FM 3-06 Urban Operations

---

**TOW-MANV-5012:** Defend a Battle Position

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To deny enemy forces from specific terrain for a specific time.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize into a defending force and a counterattack force.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of AO.
5. Occupy and establish primary, alternate and supplementary positions.
6. Conduct engagement area development.
7. Conduct continuing actions.
8. Defend against enemy attack.
9. Counterattack against enemy forces.
10. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**
ORDNANCE:

DODIC | Quantity
-------|------------------
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP | 400 rounds per platoon
BA12 Cartridge, 40mm Practice MK 281 Mod | 96 rounds per platoon

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulations can be used to train this task.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task can be trained to standard using simulation.

TOW-MANV-5013: Conduct Linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To linkup with a friendly unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Prep for combat.
4. Execute command and control.
5. Set conditions for linkup.
6. Move to contact point.
7. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal.
8. Stationary unit responds with far recognition signal.
9. Stationary unit initiates near recognition signal.
10. Moving unit responds with near recognition signal.
11. Coordinate follow-on operations.

REFERENCES:
1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

TOW-MANV-5014: Conduct a Relief in Place

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.
STANDARD: To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Exchange liaison personnel between relieving unit and unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Moving unit maintains weapon system orientation towards last known enemy location and weapon status is hold until the vehicle has crossed friendly lines.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Relieving unit assumes command of AO.
7. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

RELATED EVENTS: Company level RIPs

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
RANGE/TRAINING AREA: light forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:
ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task cannot be trained to standard using simulation.

TOW-MANV-5015: Conduct a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Moving unit displays proper recognition signals.
3. Moving unit maintains weapon system towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:** Light Forces

---

**TOW-MANV-5016:** Conduct a Withdrawal

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Break contact from enemy forces.
5. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. CRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:**

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA:**
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:** Simulations platforms

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:** Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

---

**TOW-MANV-5017:** Conduct Security Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
MCT 1.6.1  
MCT 1.6.4
CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To protect friendly force by providing early warning of enemy operations and time for friendly forces to maneuver against them.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Provide screening force, guarding force, and/or covering force.

CHAINED EVENTS: TANK-MANV-5019

REFERENCES:
1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

TOW-FSPT-5001: Employ Fire Support Assets

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct fire support planning.
2. Make contact with enemy forces.
3. Execute fire support plan.

CHAINED EVENTS: 1802-CBTS-2001

REFERENCES:
1. MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
2. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Virtual Battlefield System 2 (VBS2) and the Combined Arms Network (CAN) can be used to train individual and collective fire support operations using simulation.
### 10005. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS FOR SCOUT PLATOON

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EVENT CODE</th>
<th>EVAL-CODED</th>
<th>EVENT</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCT-C2-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures</td>
<td>10-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-INT-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupy an Observation Post</td>
<td>10-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-INT-5002</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield</td>
<td>10-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-REC-5001</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Conduct Reconnaissance operations</td>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-FPRO-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct CBRN Operations</td>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>React to Indirect Fire</td>
<td>10-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5002</td>
<td></td>
<td>React to Air Attack</td>
<td>10-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5003</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Resupply Operations</td>
<td>10-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5004</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct A Tactical Road March</td>
<td>10-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct Convoy Security Operations</td>
<td>10-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupy an Assembly Area</td>
<td>10-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5007</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Dismounted Patrol</td>
<td>10-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5008</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Linkup</td>
<td>10-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5009</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Relief in Place</td>
<td>10-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5010</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Passage of Lines</td>
<td>10-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5011</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conduct a Withdrawal</td>
<td>10-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-MANV-5012</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Conduct a Screen</td>
<td>10-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCT-FSPT-5001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Employ Fire Support Assets</td>
<td>10-29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 10006. SCOUT 5000-LEVEL EVENTS

**SCT-C2-5001:** Conduct Troop Leading Procedures

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To plan and prepare for operations.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Begin the planning and assess METT-TCSL.
2. Arrange for reconnaissance via map, imagery, UAS or recon patrol.
3. Make reconnaissance and confirm SALUTE, KOCOA, routes and positions.
4. Complete the planning and develop operations order.
5. Issue orders.
6. Supervise by conducting brief backs, PCC/PCIs and rehearsals.

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
3. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
7. **TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery**

---

**SCT-INT-5001**: Occupy an observation post

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 6 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD**: To observe and report all activity to higher.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Move by cover and concealed route to the vicinity of observation post.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of tentative observation post.
3. Occupy observation post.
4. Establish security.
5. Establish communications.
6. Report activity to higher.
7. Move observation post as required.
8. Execute evacuation plan as required.
9. Execute relief actions or de-establish observation post.

**REFERENCES**:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader’s Guide
4. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

---

**SCT-INT-5002**: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**
- MCT 1.6.1
- MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  
**SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD**: To analyze the threat and environment in a specific geographic area.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Employ UAS
2. Describe the battlefield effects.
3. Evaluate the threat.
4. Determine threat courses of action.
5. Define the battlefield environment.

**REFERENCES**
SCT-REC-5001: Conduct Reconnaissance operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1    MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To observe and report all activity to higher.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct Planning.
2. Issue order.
3. Conduct Area recon.
4. Conduct Zone recon.
5. Conduct route recon.
6. Conduct urban area recon.
7. Conduct obstacle/bypass recon.
8. Report intelligence to higher.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
5. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment

SCT-FPRO-5001: Conduct CBRN Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1    MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO    SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To mitigate CBRN threats and maintain operational effectiveness.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct CBRN threat analysis.
2. Plan for handling of contaminated personnel and equipment.
3. Plan for CBRN logistical requirements.
4. Conduct CBRN warning and reporting.
5. Conduct monitor, survey, and decontamination operations.
6. Conduct operations in contaminated environments.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCWP 3-37.2A Multi-service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear contamination avoidance

RELATED EVENTS:  TANK-FPRO-6002

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17230 Gas Chamber
Facility Code 17932 Decontamination Training Site
Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

SCT-MANV-5001:  React to Indirect Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED:  NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

CONDITION:  Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD:  To mitigate the effects of enemy indirect fires on friendly forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy indirect fires.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct action drill if moving to avoid impact area.
4. Send report to higher headquarters.
5. Continue mission.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:  This task can be trained to standard using simulation.

SCT-MANV-5002:  React to an Air Attack
SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To mitigate the effects of enemy air attacks on friendly forces

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Identify and alert platoon of enemy aircraft.
2. Issue orders.
3. If not observed by enemy aircraft, vehicles seek cover and concealment with 100 meter minimum dispersion.
4. Engage aircraft with heavy volume of fires in the path of flight.
5. Send report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 1-402 Aviator's Recognition Manual
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. MCWP 3-2 Aviation Operations

SCT-MANV-5003: Conduct Resupply Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To replenish all classes of supplies in order to maintain combat power.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Submit logistics reports to higher headquarters.
2. Coordinate with company trains to conduct resupply.
3. Provide security at resupply point.
4. Conduct resupply via service station method.
5. Process all EPWs and casualties.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
5. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
6. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
8. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support Operations

---

**SCT-MANV-5004**: Conduct Convoy Security Operations

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD**: To provide close in protection of a convoy while on the move.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Conduct planning from METT-TCSL assessment and convoy operations order.
2. Issue orders.
3. Conduct movement along assigned route.
4. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
5. Conduct short halts as required.
6. Conduct immediate action drills as required.
7. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**REFERENCES**:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations
6. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
7. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

---

**SCT-MANV-5005**: Occupy an Assembly Area

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD**: To establish an area for friendly forces to prepare for further actions.

**EVENT COMPONENTS**:
1. Dispatch quartering party to find a suitable location for assembly area.
2. Quartering party marks and guides friendly forces into position.
3. Friendly forces establish local security.
4. Adjacent units tie in flanks.
5. Establish observation post
6. Establish wire communications.
7. Prepare sketch cards and fire plans.
8. Camouflage positions.
9. Perform resupply and maintenance operations.
10. Conduct continuing actions.

**RELATED EVENT:** TANK-MANV-5001

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

**SCT-MANV-5006:** Conduct a Tactical Road March

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1

**EVALUATION-CODED:** NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

**CONDITION:** Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD:** To move along a designated route and arrange forces according to enemy situation and terrain.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Determine formation, movement technique, speed and dispersion.
2. Determine order of march.
3. Issue orders.
4. Conduct movement along assigned route.
5. Report all tactical control measures to higher headquarters.
6. Conduct short halts as required.
7. Conduct battle drills as required.
8. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

**RELATED EVENTS:** TANK-MANV-5005

**REFERENCES:**
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
3. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-15.5 Antiarmor Operations

**SCT-MANV-5007:** Conduct a Dismounted Patrol

**SUPPORTED MET(S):** MCT 1.6.1
EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To move along a designated route and arrange forces according to enemy situation and terrain.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Receives the order.
2. Analysis METT-TCSL.
3. Submit patrol report.
4. Conduct recon, security, combat, or tracking patrol.
5. Report to higher.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
4. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
5. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

SCT-MANV-5008: Conduct Linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To linkup with a friendly unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Integrate fires.
3. Prep for combat.
4. Execute command and control.
5. Set conditions for linkup.
6. Move to contact point.
7. Moving unit initiates far recognition signal.
8. Stationary unit responds with far recognition signal.
9. Stationary unit initiates near recognition signal.
10. Moving unit responds with near recognition signal.
11. Coordinate follow-on operations.

REFERENCES:
1. MCWP 3-11.1 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCWP 3-11.6 Marine Rifle Platoon

SCT-MANV-5009: Conduct a Relief in Place
SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED:  NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

CONDITION:  Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD:  To pass tactical responsibility from one unit to another.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Exchange liaison personnel between relieving unit and unit to be relieved.
2. Develop and rehearse relief in place plan.
3. Relieving unit approaches unit to be relieved from rear to release point.
4. Units conduct coordination and exchange information.
5. Relieving unit assumes fighting positions.
6. Relieving unit assumes command of AO.
7. Unit relieved egresses back along route to release point.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:  Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:  Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINistrative instructions:  Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

SCT-MANV-5010:  Conduct a Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED:  NO  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:  12 months

CONDITION:  Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD:  To pass forward or rearward of another unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Moving unit and stationary unit exchange all relevant information of enemy forces, friendly forces and terrain.
2. Moving unit displays proper recognition signals.
3. Moving unit maintains weapon system orientation towards last known enemy location.
4. Stationary unit guides moving unit through passage lanes.
5. Moving unit travels through passage lanes.

REFERENCES:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA: Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

Administrative Instructions: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

SCT-MANV-5011: Conduct a Withdrawal

Supported MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1 MCT 1.6.4

Evaluation-Coded: NO Sustainment Interval: 12 months

Condition: Given a task organized platoon.

Standard: To maneuver away from enemy forces in order to gain time and space.

Event Components:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Break contact from enemy forces.
5. Maneuver away from enemy forces.
6. Consolidate and reorganize friendly forces.

References:
1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations

Support Requirements:
RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.

SCT-MANV-5012: Conduct a Screen

SUPPORTED MET(S):
MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES  SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given a task organized platoon.

STANDARD: To provide early warning, real time information, reaction time, maneuver space, and destroy/repel threat reconnaissance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:
1. Conduct planning.
2. Task organize friendly forces.
3. Issue orders.
4. Establish contact with enemy forces.
5. Report enemy operations to higher headquarters.
6. Maintain contact with enemy forces and develop situation as directed.

REFERENCES:
1. ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
2. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP</td>
<td>300 rounds per platoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St</td>
<td>3 signals per platoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:
Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17720 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Platoon Battle Run
Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Simulation platforms
**SCT-FSPT-5001**: Employ Fire Support Assets

**SUPPORTED MET(S):**

MCT 1.6.1  MCT 1.6.4

**EVALUATION-CODED**: NO  **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL**: 12 months

**CONDITION**: Given a task organized platoon.

**STANDARD**: To provide timely and accurate fires that support friendly forces ground scheme of maneuver.

**EVENT COMPONENTS:**
1. Conduct fire support planning.
2. Make contact with enemy forces.
3. Execute fire support plan.

**REFERENCES**:
1. JP 3-09.3 Close Air Support
2. MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
3. MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
4. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

**SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**:

**RANGE/TRAINING AREA**: Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

**OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS**: Simulation platforms

**MISCELLANEOUS**:

**ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS**: Virtual Battlefield System 2 (VBS2) and the Combined Arms Network (CAN) can be used to train individual and collective fire support operations using simulation. Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on this training task.
Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Pub 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.

A

**After Action Review (AAR).** A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

C

**Chaining.** A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-level. Utilizing the building block approach to progressive training, these collective events are further supported by individual training events at the 1000 and 2000-levels. When a higher-level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

D

**Deception.** Those measures designed to mislead the enemy by manipulation, distortion, or falsification of evidence to induce the enemy to react in a manner prejudicial to the enemy’s interests. (JP 1-02)

E

**E-Coded Event.** An “E-Coded” event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted Collective skill that contributes to the unit’s ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only “E-Coded” events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit’s CRP.

I

**Individual Readiness.** The individual training readiness of each Marine is measured by the number of individual events required and completed for the rank or billet currently held.
**Marine Corps Combat Readiness and Evaluation System (MCCRES).** An evaluation system designed to provide commanders with a comprehensive set of mission performance standards from which training programs can be developed; and through which the efficiency and effectiveness of training can be evaluated. The Ground T&R Program will eventually replace MCCRES.

**Operational Readiness (OR).** (DoD or NATO) OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

**Performance Step.** Performance steps are included in the components of an Individual T&R Event. They are the major procedures (i.e., actions) a Marine unit must accomplish to perform an individual event to standard. They describe the procedure the task performer must take to perform the task under operational conditions and provide sufficient information for a task performer to perform the procedure (may necessitate identification of supporting steps, procedures, or actions in outline form). Performance steps follow a logical progression and should be followed sequentially, unless otherwise stated. Normally, performance steps are listed only for 1000-level individual events (those that are taught in the entry-level MOS school). Listing performance steps is optional if the steps are already specified in a published reference.

**Readiness.** (DoD) Readiness is the ability of U.S. military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: (a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. (b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander’s ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

**Section Skill Tasks.** Section skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

**Training Task.** This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.
Unit CRP.  Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

Waived Event.  An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.
TANK T&R MANUAL
APPENDIX B
T&R CHANGES


   a. CG TECOM, Ground Training Division (GTD):

      (1) Will manage the Tank T&R Manual and supervise associated program of instruction (POI) development, approval, management, and maintenance.

      (2) Will input, update, and manage the T&R events within the Marine Corps Training Information Management System (MCTIMS).

      (3) Will serve as the action agent for all T&R manual conferences, reviews, updates, and electronic distribution.

2. T&R Changes

   a. T&R Reviews. A T&R review is a forum to routinely review and comprehensively revise the T&R manual. T&R reviews will normally be conducted via conference and produce a new version (e.g. NAVMC 3500.1_ ) T&R reviews may be held via correspondence with CG TECOM (GTD) approval. T&R reviews will normally convene on a biennial schedule; however, T&R reviews may be convened as appropriate or when higher headquarters direct.

   b. T&R changes. A T&R change is a change to an existing T&R between T&R reviews. T&R changes are normally completed via correspondence and produce formal changes to the existing T&R manual (e.g. NAVMC 3500.1A”Ch 1”).

3. T&R Review Pre-Conference Procedures

   a. Action

      (1) Content Sponsor. Content sponsors shall coordinate with CG TECOM (GTD) to establish a T&R conference date and prepare the initial convening message to the appropriate commands employing the MOSs contained in this Manual with an information copy to CMC (DC PP&O). CG TECOM (GTD) shall release this message 90 days before the proposed conference date. This message shall include the conference convening location and date, announce the purpose, and request interested units to submit agenda items. CG TECOM (GTD) shall coordinate with the content sponsor to consolidate agenda items and release a conference agenda message to COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, COMMARSOC, MEFs, MARDIVs, and all commands employing the MOSs contained in this Manual.

      (2) Total Force. Authorized agencies shall nominate voting representatives to CG TECOM (GTD) via message NLT 45 days prior to the conference. Units shall submit agenda items to CG TECOM (GTD) and the
content sponsor (Item, Discussion, Recommendation format) via message NLT 45 days prior to the conference.

(3) CG TECOM. CG TECOM (GTD) shall provide guidance to the content sponsor. CG TECOM (GTD) shall ensure agenda items are distributed to voting members NLT 30 days prior to the subject conference.

b. Conference Funding. Organizations shall program funding requirements for conference attendance per MCO P7100.8 (Field Budget Guidance Manual).

4. T&R Review Conference Procedures

a. All conference attendees shall be familiar with agenda items prior to the conference. Voting members shall staff agenda items and will have established command positions prior to attending a conference. As front-end agenda staffing facilitates the T&R update process, CG TECOM (GTD) discourages accepting additional agenda items during T&R conferences.

b. At the conference, attendees shall review the applicable T&R events and provide change recommendations per standard comment matrix. At a minimum, members of the conference shall complete the following tasks:

(1) Evaluate the events for effectiveness.

(2) Propose changes to the events. Review/validate/modify the following:

(a) Mission statement/METL.
(b) Programs of Instruction.
(c) Content/Phase information.
(d) Content events.
(e) Training resource requirements.
(f) Required T&R matrices/tables.
(g) Content event conversion matrix.
(h) T&R content evaluation forms.

(3) Coordinate content requirements with other communities as required.

c. Conference attendees may recommend a specific position, but it is CG TECOM, COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, and COMMARSOC who vote. This procedure ensures fair voting practices.

d. Action

(1) Content Sponsor. The content sponsor shall host the conference and ensure each attendee has access to a draft version of the T&R at the completion of the conference.

(2) CG TECOM. CG TECOM (GTD) shall provide conference guidance to the content sponsors and facilitate T&R review procedures. CG TECOM (GTD) shall ensure individual T&R chapters are developed/updated per the policies contained in this Manual.
(3) CG TECOM, COMMARFORCOM, COMMARFORPAC, COMMARFORRES, and COMMARSOC shall designate one voting member with experience in day-to-day supervision of Tank training programs to each conference. The conference attendees should include representatives from each MEF, MARDIV, and any other appropriate staff officers. CG TECOM invites HQMC to send representatives.

5. Post-Conference T&R Review Procedures

   a. Action

   (1) Content Sponsor. The content sponsor shall provide CG TECOM (GTD) a smooth, electronic version of the draft T&R chapters within 10 working days of conference completion. The content sponsor shall coordinate with CG TECOM (GTD) to prepare and release a conference report message to the MARFORs within 10 working days of conference completion. Conference report messages shall delineate significant change recommendations and request MARFORs concur or non-concur with the draft T&R Manual.

   (2) MARFORs. MARFORCOM, MARFORPAC, MARFORRES, and MARSOC shall consolidate comments from subordinate units and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM via message within 45 days of the conference completion date.

      (a) MARFOR command T&R review conference representatives shall brief their respective commands on post conference results.

      (b) MARFORs should coordinate to resolve post conference contentious issues.

      (c) Failure to respond to post conference deadlines indicates concurrence with T&R content.

   (3) CMC (DC PP&O). CMC shall review the proposed content and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM via message NLT 90 days after conference completion.

   (4) CG TECOM

      (a) CG TECOM (GTD) shall coordinate with the content sponsor to prepare and release, within 10 working days, a conference report message. CG TECOM shall ensure draft electronic versions are made available to requesting agencies.

      (b) CG TECOM shall attach MARFOR comments and forward the draft document to CMC (DC PP&O), NLT 60 days after conference completion. Unresolved issues shall be forwarded to CMC (DC PP&O) for decision.

      (c) Upon MARFOR and CMC concurrence, CG TECOM shall approve the revised manual. When the revision is approved by CG TECOM, CG TECOM (GTD) shall release a message announcing the revision has been approved. CG TECOM (GTD) shall coordinate with CMC for publication and distribution as appropriate.

6. T&R Changes via Correspondence
a. Organizations recommending T&R changes shall submit proposed changes in message format via the respective MEF/DIV to CG TECOM (GTD) and the content sponsor. Correspondence must include rationale for the change.

b. CG TECOM (GTD) and the content sponsor shall review and forward the proposed change recommendations to all MEFs/DIVs within 5 working days of receipt of the correspondence.

c. MEFs/DIVs shall submit their comments and recommendations to CG TECOM (ATB, GTD) and content sponsor within 30 days of the date of the request for comments. All comments and recommendations shall be submitted via message.

d. CG TECOM (GTD) and the content sponsor shall consolidate comments and produce a smooth draft of proposed T&R changes (include update of the T&R event conversion matrix if applicable). CG TECOM (GTD) shall release a T&R change recommendation message to the MARFORs and CMC (DC PP&O) within 45 days of the request for comments.

e. CMC (DC PP&O) and the MARFORs shall review the proposed T&R change and concur or non-concur with justification to CG TECOM (GTD) within 30 days of the manual change recommendation message release. Unresolved issues shall be forwarded to CMC (DC PP&O) for decision. Upon concurrence, CG TECOM (GTD) shall release a message approving the T&R Manual change.

7. Applicability. When a T&R Manual update or change is approved for use, the approved version of the manual becomes the training standard for all applicable units. Units shall transition to the approved T&R Manual as soon as practical.
AMMUNITION REQUIREMENTS

Ammunition totals were calculated based on 100% of Table of Organization for individual training events and 100% of Table of Equipment for collective training events. The below charts depicts the total annual ammunition requirement for a Tank battalion and its personnel to train to standard on every separate task in this T&R Manual. It is possible to train several tasks in a single evolution. For example: If a tank battalion conducts an attack (TANK-MNVR-7003), then the subordinate tank companies have conducted an attack (TANK-MNVR-6003). Conversely, if all the tank companies in a battalion have successfully conducted an attack, the battalion commander has the discretion to certify that the tank battalion has successfully trained to standard in conducting an attack. It will be possible to train a tank battalion to standard on certain tasks with less ammunition than is listed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>4th</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA38</td>
<td>CTG, CAL .50 SLAP-T SNGLD RD</td>
<td>3,168</td>
<td>3,168</td>
<td>2,984</td>
<td></td>
<td>9,320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56MM BALL CLPD</td>
<td>112,340</td>
<td>112,340</td>
<td>112,340</td>
<td></td>
<td>337,020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56MM TR M856 SNGLD RD</td>
<td>25,168</td>
<td>25,168</td>
<td>25,168</td>
<td></td>
<td>75,504</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56MM 4 BALL M855/1 TR</td>
<td>22,200</td>
<td>22,200</td>
<td>22,200</td>
<td></td>
<td>66,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A075</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56mm BLANK LNKD</td>
<td>9,800</td>
<td>9,800</td>
<td>9,800</td>
<td></td>
<td>29,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A080</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56mm BLANK</td>
<td>35,400</td>
<td>35,400</td>
<td>35,400</td>
<td></td>
<td>106,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A111</td>
<td>CTG, 7.62MM BLNK LNKD</td>
<td>10,600</td>
<td>10,600</td>
<td>15,800</td>
<td></td>
<td>37,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>CTG, 7.62MM 4 BALL/1 TRACER</td>
<td>520,800</td>
<td>520,800</td>
<td>378,300</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,419,900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>CTG, CAL.50 API M8/API-T M20</td>
<td>223,000</td>
<td>223,000</td>
<td>153,300</td>
<td></td>
<td>599,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A598</td>
<td>CTG, .50 BLANK M1A1 LNKD</td>
<td>5,300</td>
<td>5,300</td>
<td>7,900</td>
<td></td>
<td>18,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM TP MK281-0</td>
<td>8,792</td>
<td>8,792</td>
<td>8,792</td>
<td></td>
<td>26,376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA21</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM TP MK281 MOD 1</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B519</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM TP M781 SNGLD RD</td>
<td>650</td>
<td>650</td>
<td>650</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B535</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM ILLUM WHT STAR PARA</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>155</td>
<td></td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B542</td>
<td>CTG, 40mm M430 &amp; A1 Linked</td>
<td>5760</td>
<td>5760</td>
<td>5760</td>
<td></td>
<td>17,280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B546</td>
<td>CTG, 40mm HEDP M433</td>
<td>1080</td>
<td>1080</td>
<td>1080</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31</td>
<td>CTG, 120MM TPMP-T M1002</td>
<td>2,914</td>
<td>2,914</td>
<td>2,344</td>
<td></td>
<td>8,172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38</td>
<td>CTG, 120MM CANISTER M1028</td>
<td>421</td>
<td>421</td>
<td>327</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,169</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The table below represents the ideal ammunition allocation to conduct an active duty tank Battalion’s annual field exercise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>NOMENCLATURE</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4/M16A4</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A059</td>
<td>CTG, M56 BALL</td>
<td></td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A063</td>
<td>CTG, M56 TRACER</td>
<td></td>
<td>5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A080</td>
<td>CTG, M56 BLANK SINGLE</td>
<td></td>
<td>12,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A075</td>
<td>CTG, M56 BLANK Linked</td>
<td></td>
<td>6,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M249</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A064</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56 4 &amp; 1 Linked</td>
<td></td>
<td>14,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M240</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A131</td>
<td>CTG, 7.62 4 &amp; 1 Linked</td>
<td></td>
<td>100,00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A576</td>
<td>CTG, CAL 50 4 &amp; 1 Linked</td>
<td></td>
<td>60,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M203</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B519</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM TP M781 SINGLE RD</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B535</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM ILLUM WHT STAR PARA XM 583/E1 SINGLE RD</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mk19</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM TP MK281-0 (LOW COST TRAINING CTG)</td>
<td></td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B542</td>
<td>CTG, 40mm M430 &amp; A1 Linked</td>
<td></td>
<td>5760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B546</td>
<td>CTG, 40mm HEDP M433</td>
<td></td>
<td>1080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>120mm</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA31</td>
<td>CTG, 120MM TPMP-T M1002</td>
<td></td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA38</td>
<td>CTG, 120MM CANNISTER M1028</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C785</td>
<td>CTG, 120MM TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td></td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOW</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WH06</td>
<td>TOW2A</td>
<td></td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HAND SMOKE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G940/GRN</td>
<td>GRENADE, HAND SMK GRN M18</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G945/YLW</td>
<td>GRENADE, HAND SMK YLW M18</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G955/VIO</td>
<td>GRENADE, HAND SMK VIO M18</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The table below represents the ideal ammunition allocation to conduct an active duty tank Company’s annual field exercise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>DODIC</th>
<th>NOMENCLATURE</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M4/M16A4</td>
<td>A059</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56MM BALL</td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A063</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56MM TRACER</td>
<td>5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A080</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56MM BLANK SNGL</td>
<td>4,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A075</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56MM BLANK LNKD</td>
<td>2,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M249</td>
<td>A064</td>
<td>CTG, 5.56MM 4&amp;1 LNKD</td>
<td>5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M250</td>
<td>A131</td>
<td>CTG, 7.62MM 4&amp;1 LNKD</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M2</td>
<td>A576</td>
<td>CTG, CAL 50 4&amp;1 LNKD</td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M203</td>
<td>B519</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM TP M781 SNGL RD</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B535</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM ILLUM WHT STAR PARA XM 583/E1 SNGL RD</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mk19</td>
<td>BA12</td>
<td>CTG, 40MM TP MK281-0 (LOW COST TRAINING CTG)</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120mm</td>
<td>CA38</td>
<td>CTG, 120MM CANISTER M1028</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C785</td>
<td>CTG, 120MM TPCSDS-T M865</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOW</td>
<td>WH05</td>
<td>TOW2A INERT</td>
<td>Bn(52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAND SMOKE</td>
<td>G940</td>
<td>GRENADE, HAND SMK GRN M18 (GRN)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G945</td>
<td>GRENADE, HAND SMK YLW M18 (YLW)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G955</td>
<td>GRENADE, HAND SMK VIO M18 (VIO)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G982</td>
<td>GRENADE, HAND PRAC SMK TA XM/M83 (PRAC)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS GRENADE</td>
<td>G922</td>
<td>GRENADE, HAND RIOT CS XM47E3/M47 (RIOT)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITE PARA</td>
<td>L312</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR PARA M127/A1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITE CLUST</td>
<td>L316</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM WHT STAR CLSTR M18A1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREEN PARA</td>
<td>L310</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN STAR PARA M19A1/A2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREEN CLUST</td>
<td>L314</td>
<td>SIGNAL, ILLUM GRN CLSTR M125/A1/E1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## GUNNERY AMMO REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GUN TABLE (Tank)</th>
<th>A131</th>
<th>A576</th>
<th>CA31</th>
<th>C785</th>
<th>CA38</th>
<th>AA38</th>
<th>A598</th>
<th>A111</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GT II</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT III</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT IV</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT V</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT VI</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tank TOTAL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Single SA Qual)</td>
<td>1,950</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Duty Bn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual TOTAL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(58 Tanks x2)*</td>
<td>226,200</td>
<td>40,600</td>
<td>2,436</td>
<td>3,016</td>
<td>232</td>
<td>2,320</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve Bn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual TOTAL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(86 Tanks)^</td>
<td>167,700</td>
<td>30,100</td>
<td>1,978</td>
<td>2,150</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>1,720</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT VII-IX (Sect)</td>
<td>1,400</td>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Duty Bn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual TOTAL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(29 Sections)</td>
<td>40,600</td>
<td>23,200</td>
<td>406</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>464</td>
<td>2,900</td>
<td>5,800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve Bn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual TOTAL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(43 Sections)</td>
<td>60,200</td>
<td>34,400</td>
<td>602</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>688</td>
<td>4,300</td>
<td>8,600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT X-XII (Plt)</td>
<td>2,800</td>
<td>1,600</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Duty Bn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual TOTAL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12 Platoons)</td>
<td>33,600</td>
<td>19,200</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>384</td>
<td>2,400</td>
<td>4,800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve Bn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual TOTAL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18 Platoons)</td>
<td>50,400</td>
<td>28,800</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>576</td>
<td>3,600</td>
<td>7,200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEU Platoon (1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>160</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTALS:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Total:</td>
<td>300,400</td>
<td>83,000</td>
<td>2,692</td>
<td>3,902</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>3,168</td>
<td>5,300</td>
<td>10,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reserve Total:</td>
<td>278,300</td>
<td>93,300</td>
<td>2,122</td>
<td>3,112</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>2,984</td>
<td>7,900</td>
<td>15,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined TOTAL:</td>
<td>578,700</td>
<td>176,300</td>
<td>4,814</td>
<td>7,014</td>
<td>484</td>
<td>6,152</td>
<td>13,200</td>
<td>26,400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Total represents one active duty Tank Battalion completing semi-annual qualifications for tables II-VI.

^The Reserve Tank Battalion completes annual qualification on tables II-VI.
Provided is a listing of applicable simulators/simulations available to improve training for both individual Marines and unit training in the Marine Corps Tank community. For more information regarding training and Modeling & Simulation (M&S) systems, review the Modeling, Trainings, and Simulations Division’s (MTSD) website: https://205.110.216.207/mtsd/default.aspx

The following systems can be used to train various tasks in the Tank T&R manual:

1. **AGTS Training System (AGTS):** AGTS is a subsystem of the Combat Vehicle Trainer System (CVTS). It is a family of gunnery training simulators for vehicle commander/gunner teams for M1A2 System Enhanced Package (SEP), M1A2, M1A1, M1A1 SA, M1A1 FEP and LAV-25 vehicles. It is rapidly transportable and deployable and features a high-fidelity crew compartment replicating the vehicle's turret and fire control system in both physical and functional aspects. The AGTS presents the vehicle commander and gunner with a full range of simulated engagement situations. The system trains both fully-operational and degraded-mode gunnery techniques under a wide variety of conditions. The pre-programmed, computer-controlled exercises vary in target type and number, range, vehicle and target motion, and visibility. The AGTS-based systems are capable of networking to provide section, platoon and company collective gunnery training. An after action review capability is provided for exercise management and conducting AARs.

2. **Close Combat Tactical Trainer (CCTT):** The CCTT supports training of armor, mechanized infantry, cavalry units and recon units from platoon through battalion/squadron echelon, including the staff. The primary training audience operates from both full-crew simulators and mock-up or real command posts. Simulators have sufficient fidelity for individuals and crews to accomplish their collective missions. Simulators replicate the Abrams and Bradley Fighting vehicles and selected tactical wheeled vehicles through the use of the Reconfigurable Vehicle Simulator (RVC) and the Reconfigurable Vehicle Tactical Trainer (RVTT). The system is equipped with the latest Force XXI Battle Command Brigade-and- Below (FBCB2) in support of training the digital force. A combination of tactical and simulated equipment located in mock-up command posts or real command posts provides artillery, mortar, combat engineers and logistics units a link to training in the synthetic battlefield. Semi-automated forces workstations provide additional supporting units (i.e., aviation and air defense artillery) and all opposing forces within the battlefield. Thus, while maneuver units (combat crews and battalion-level staff members) constitute the CCTT's primary training audience, all battlefield operating systems are represented in the simulation. This ensures effective simulation within a combined arms training environment that encompasses daylight, night and fog conditions. Mobile versions of CCTT are fielded to the Army National Guard and U.S. Army units. CCTT is interoperable with the Aviation Combined Arms Tactical Trainer and is moving towards being Synthetic Environment Core compliant.
3. **Supporting Arms Virtual Trainer (SAVT)** is a fixed site, partial dome (240x60 degree), virtual immersive training environment for Joint Terminal Attack Controllers (JTACs), Forward Air Controllers (FACs), Joint Forward Observers (JFOs), and Forward Observers (FOs). SAVT provides a “hands-on,” immersive, mission-based, combined arms training environment for one JTAC/FAC or one JFO/FO set of students acting as a Fire Support Team (FiST) that will fully replicate the entire Close Air Support (CAS) mission as a training event. It will also provide a briefing/debriefing environment for a group of students to monitor, review mission-based training events, and conduct after-action discussions. SAVT trains Marines to approved standards of combat skills and readiness.

4. **Deployable Virtual Training Environment (DVTE)** is a first person skills sustainment trainer that can be used to train Marines from the individual to the battalion staff by using a simulation network with reconfigurable workstations capable of emulating a vast array of training scenarios. DVTE is made up of two components; the first is the Infantry Tool Kit (ITK) which contains several Tactical Decision-making Simulations. The other is the Combined Arms Network (CAN). DVTE training applications trains Marines to approved standards of combat skills and readiness.

Below is a list of the DVTE training applications/capabilities:

a. **Virtual Battlefield System 2 (VBS2)** is an interactive, three-dimensional synthetic environment in which small unit tactics may be practiced among team members. Photo-realistic terrain, user created mission scenarios, and variable environmental conditions enhance the team training experience. Mission planning and mission rehearsal can be executed from squad to platoon level. VBS2 can be used to support Fire Support Training, convoy operations and tactical guided discussions.

b. **Combined Arms Network (CAN)** is a computer based training tool that provides standard based training for individual Forward Observers, Forward Air Controllers, and Joint Terminal Attack Controllers as well as team training for company Fire Support Teams.

5. **Indoor Simulated Marksmanship Trainer (ISMT)** is an interactive, three dimensional, audio/video weapons simulator that provides enhanced small arms training in marksmanship, weapons employment, indirect fire, and tactical decision-making for Marines. The ISMT simulates range firing for basic infantry weapons, tactical employment training, call for fire, and shoot/no shoot decisions making drills. The ISMT can be utilized to train individuals, fire teams, and squads effectively and efficiently to the approved standards of combat skills and readiness.

The primary focus for simulation should be on the reinforcement and sustainment training of individual and collective skills on the section and crew level – in the context of platoon operations. Simulations/Simulators and other training devices may be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on training a task. Commander’s discretion will determine which task will be trained to standard in simulation. Simulations are used as a prerequisite to live fire (Gate to live fire), but will not replace any live-fire evaluations (Table VI, IX, XII).
Upgrades made to the current simulation system should be capable of keeping pace with applicable modifications made to the M1A1 Main Battle Tank in order to continue replicating the above tasks in as realistic a functional environment (replication of the vehicle) as is possible.
APPENDIX E

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

AAC . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Armament Accuracy Checks
AMPH . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Amphibious Operations
AGTS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Advanced Gunny Training System
BDA . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Battle Damage Assessment
BFT . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Blue Force Tracker
C2 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Command and Control
C2W . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Command and Control Warfare
C4I . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence
CA. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Civil Affairs
CAG . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Civil Affairs Group
CAST . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Combined Arms staff trainer
CAN . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Combined Arms Network
CATF . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Commander Amphibious Task Force
CCIR . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Commander's Critical Information Requirements
CCTT . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Close Combat Tactical Trainer
CCP . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Casualty Collection point
CE . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Command Element
CHOP . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Change of Operational Control
CI . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Counterintelligence
CMO . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Civil-Military Operations
CNA . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Computer Network Attack
CND . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Computer Network Defense
CNE . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Computer network Exploitation
CNO . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Computer Network Operations
COA . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Course of Action
COC . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Company Operations Center
COG . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Centers of Gravity
COMSEC . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Communications Security
CONOPS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Contingency Operations
CP . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Counter-Propaganda
CVC . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Combat vehicle Crewman’s Helmet
DoD . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Department of Defense
DVTE . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Deployable Virtual Training Environment
EA . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Electronic Attack
ECM . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Electronic Counter Measures
EMCON . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Emissions Control
EMW . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Expeditionary Maneuver Warfare
EP . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Electronic Protection
ES . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Electronic Support
EW . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Electronic Warfare
FDC . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Fire Direction Center
FM . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Field Manual (army)
FIWC . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Fleet Information Warfare Center
FiST . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Fire Support Team
FOB . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Forward Operating Base
FRAGO . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Fragmentary Order
G2 ............................ Intelligence Officer (major subordinate
                  Commands and Larger organizations
G3 ............................ Operations Officer (major subordinate
                  Commands and Larger Organizations)
GCE .............................. Ground Combat Element
GPS .............................. Gunners Primary Site
GST ............................. Gunnery Skills Test
HBCT ............................. Heavy Brigade Combat Team
HUMINT ........................ Human Intelligence
IPB ............................... Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
ISMT ............................. Indoor Simulated Marksmanship Trainer
LF ............................... Landing Force
LZ ............................... Landing Zone
MCDP ............................ Marine Corps Doctrinal Publication
MCM ............................... Mine Counter Measure Platoon
MCPP ............................ Marine Corps Planning Process
MCRP ............................ Marine Corps Reference Publication
MCWP ............................ Marine Corps Warfighting Publication
MEF ............................... Marine Expeditionary Force
METT-TSL ........................ Mission, Enemy, Terrain and Weather, Troops and
                  Support Available-Time Available
MOJT ............................ Managed on the Job Training
MPF .............................. Maritime pre-positioning force
MRS .............................. Muzzle Reference System
NVD .............................. Night Vision Device
NVG .............................. Night Vision Goggle
OPORD ........................... Operation Order
OPSEC ........................... Operations Security
PGS .............................. Precision Gunnery System
PMCS ............................ Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
ROC-V ............................ Recognition of Vehicles
SAVT ............................ Supporting Arms Virtual Trainer
UHF .............................. Ultra High Frequency
VBS2 ............................ Virtual Battlefield System 2
VHF .............................. Very High Frequency
REFERENCES

Field Manuals (FM)
ATP 3-20.15 (FM 3-20.15) Tank Platoon
FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
FM 3-34.214 Explosives and Demolitions
FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
FM 3-90.2 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
FM 21-60 Visual Signals
FM 23-30 Grenade
FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
FM 5-20 Camouflage
FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
FM 5-100 Engineers in Combat Operations
FM 5-101 Mobility
FM 5-103 Survivability

Joint Publications (JP/JCS)
JP 3-09.3 Close Air Support
JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations

Marine Corps Order (MCO)
MCO P4790.2C MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
MCO 4400.16 Uniform Material Movement and Issue Priority System (UMMIPS)
MCO 3570.1C Range Safety
MCO 4500.9 Defense Transportation Regulations
MCO 4630.6 Military Airlift Command Requirement
MCO P4450.12 Storage and Handling of Hazardous Materials
MCO P5090.2A Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual
MCO 3574.2k Marine Corps Combat Marksmanship Program
MCO 4400.172 Table of Equipment (T/E) Allowance Change Procedures

TC
TC 3-20.1-01 Gunnery Skills Test
TC 3-20.1-11 (MCWP 3-12.3) M1A1 Direct Fire
TC 3-20.1-04 Detect Identify Decide Engage and Assess (DIDEA)
TC 25-8 Training Ranges

Marine Corps Doctrinal Publications
MCDP 2 Intelligence
MCDP 4 Logistics
MCDP 5 Planning
MCDP 6 Command and Control

Marine Corps Reference Publications (MCRPs)
MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
MCRP 2-3A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace
MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
MCRP 3-16.2 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
MCRP 3-31A Military Sealift Command in Support of Amphibious Operations
MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
MCRP 3-16.6A Multi-Service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-FIRE)
MCRP 3-13.1B Manual for the Track Combat Vehicle Driver
MCRP 4-11.4A Recovery and Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
MCRP 3-17.6A Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys
MCRP 3-15.2B Mortar Gunnery
MCRP 3-01B Pistol Marksmanship

**Marine Corps Warfighting Publications (MCWPs)**
MCWP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations
MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collection
MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
MCWP 3-1 Ground Combat Operations
MCWP 3-12 Marine Corps Tank Employment
MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element
MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
MCWP 3-17.8 Combined Arms Mobility Operations
TC 3-20.1 (MCWP 3-12.2) Direct Fire Gunnery
MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
MCWP 3-32 Maritime Prepositioning Force Operations
MCWP 3-37.2A Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
MCWP 3-37.1 MTTP for CBRN Operations
MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
MCWP 3-42.1 Fire Support in MAGTF Operations
MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support
MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting, and Controlling
MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
MCWP 3-35.1 Cold Weather Operations
MCWP 3-35.2 Mountain Operations
MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
MCWP 3-35.5 Jungle Operations
MCWP 3-35.6 Desert Operations
MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
MCWP 4-11 Tactical-Level Logistics
MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP)
MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
MCWP 6-22A Multiservice Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Radio (SINCGARS)
NAVMCs
NAVMC 10245 Equipment Repair Order (ERO)
NAVMC 10425.REV 1-95 Pistol Scorecard
NAVMC 8011 Class V Material Allowance for Training, Programmed Testing, and Security

Lubrication Instruction
LO 9-2350-264-13 Lubrication Order M1A1 Abrams Tank

TM 08953A-10-1 Advanced Gunnery Training System
TM 08953A-10-2 Advanced Gunnery Training System
TM 08953A 14&P Tank Deep Water Fording Kit
TM 08636A-14/1 USMC Technical Manual, Intercom Set AN/VIC-2(V)
TM 08953A-10-1-3 Operator's Manual for Boresighting and Zeroing M1A1 Tank Armament
TM 11-5820-890-10-8 SINCGARS Radio Sets, Operators Manual
TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)
TM 11-5985-262-14 Antenna AS 1729/VRC
TM 3-4230-204-12&P Operator's Manual for M11 PDA
TM 3-6665-307-10 Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Detector Kit
TM 5-2590-509-10 Operator's Manual, Mine Clearing Blade for M1, IPM1, or M1A1 Abrams Tank
TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual Machine Gun, Cal .50
TM 9-1005-262-15 MAINTENANCE MANUAL, 7.62 MM MACHINEGUN M60D
TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
TM 11-5855-262-10 Operator's Manual, AN/PVS-7
TM 4700-15/1 Ground Equipment Record Procedures
TM 05538C-10/1A Operator's Manual, Rifle, 5.56mm, M16A2 w/Equipment
TM 08521A/09761a-23&P/2a Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
TM 08670A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
TM 08671A-10/1A Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 5.56mm, M249
TM 09134A-12&P/1 AT-4 tracer trainer
TM 1005A-10/1 Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9
TM 9-1315-886-12 Launcher and Cartridge 84MM, M136 (AT-4)
TM 9-1340-214-10 LAAW/LAAW trainer (practice)
TM 9-1425-472-12 TOW 2 Weapon System Guided Missile System M220E4
TM 9-1425-923-12 Saber System (Improved Target Acquisition System) M41A
ST 3-20.21-2 Vehicle Crew Evaluator Exportable Packet
TM 1005A-10/1 PISTOL SEMIAUTOMATIC 9mm, M9, OPERATOR'S MANUAL
TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
TM 11-5820-890-10-2 SINCGARS ICOM Ground Radio Operators Pocket Guide for Manpack
TM 11-5825-283-10 Operator's Manual for Manpack Radio Sets AN/ASQ-177C(V)4; AN/PSQ-6C; AN/VSQ-2C(V)1; AN/VSQ-2C(V)2; AN/VSQ-2C(V)4
TM 11-5830-263-10 Operator's Manual for Vehicular Intercommunication Set, AN/VIC-3(V)
TM 11-5985-262-14 Antenna AS 1729/VRC
TM 3-6665-307-10 Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Detector Kit
TM 9-1005-249-10 M16A2 Operators Manual

Miscellaneous
LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
UM 4400-124 SASSY Using Unit Procedures
GTA 17-2-13 Armored Vehicle Recognition Cards
GTA 17-2-9 Combat Vehicle Identification
DA-2404 Form DA-2404
DA PAM 385-63 Department of the Army Range Safety